

**Bit by Bit**  
كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية



PARENTS' GUIDE

# CONNECT

**4<sup>th</sup>**  
PRIMARY FOUR  
FIRST TERM



**2025**

الصف الرابع الابتدائي  
الفصل الدراسي الأول

**دار غزة**

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com





# Contents

## Part 1

### Revision on Primary 3

- Punctuation
- How to write paragraphs
- How to answer comprehension questions
- Let's remember!
- Specification for Fourth Year Primary

## Part 2

### Theme 1 I discover myself

Unit 1 I feel good

Unit 2 Desert animals

Unit 3 Why do we grow plants?

Review 1

### Theme 2 Myself and others

Unit 4 Where do you live?

Unit 5 Where do you work?

Unit 6 What do you do?

Review 2

### Project

- Listening materials





## مراجعة على ماسبق دارسته بالصف الثالث الابتدائي



### A Revision on Vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات

#### Countries and nationalities دول وجنسيات



France فرنسا



French فرنسية



Egypt مصر



Egyptian مصرية



America امريكا



American امريكي



China الصين



Chinese صيني

#### Food and drinks اطعمة ومشروبات



banana  
موزة



apple  
تفاحة



water  
مياه



fish  
سمك



fruit  
فاكهة



vegetables  
خضراوات



ful  
فول مدمس



falafel  
طعمية / فلافل



muffin  
كعكة أسفنجية



hot chocolate  
مشروب شيكولاتة ساخنة



tea شاي



bread خبز



milk لبن



noodles شعيرية



soup شوربة



chicken لحم دجاج / دجاجة



rice ارز

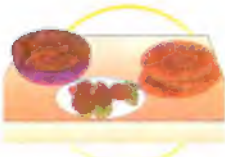


potatoes بطاطس

# Revision

## Meals

## الوجبات



breakfast  
وجبة الافطار



lunch  
وجبة الغداء



dinner  
وجبة العشاء



snack  
وجبة خفيفة

## Healthy and unhealthy food الطعام الصحي وغير الصحي



carrots جزر



lettuce خس



apples تفاح



eggs بيض



cereals  
طعام من الحبوب



dairy products  
منتجات الالبان



bread  
خبز



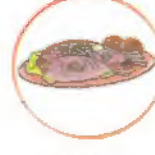
meat  
لحم



fruit  
فاكهة



vegetables  
خضراوات



fish  
سمك



chocolate  
شيكولاتة



ice cream ايس كريم



sweets حلوى



burger برجر



sugar سكر

## At a restaurant في المطعم



restaurant  
مطعم



menu  
قائمة الطعام



rice pudding  
ارز بلبن



dessert  
طعام التحلية



orange juice  
عصير برتقال





burgers and fries  
برجر وبطاطس مقلىة



chicken and pasta  
دجاج ومكرونه



chocolate cake  
تورته الشيكولاتة



cola  
(مشروب غازي)

## A healthy heart

## قلب صحي



healthy diet  
نظام غذائي صحي



water  
ماء



salad  
سلطة



exercise  
يتدرب / يتمرّن



heart  
قلب



eat fruit  
ياكل فاكهة



go for a walk  
يذهب للمشي

## School subjects

## المواد الدراسية



math  
الرياضيات



geography  
الجغرافيا



Arabic  
اللغة العربية



writing  
الكتابة



reading  
القراءة



English  
اللغة الانجليزية



German  
اللغة  
الالمانية



music  
حصّة  
الموسيقى



art  
حصّة  
الرسم



PE  
حصّة التربية  
البدنية



social studies  
الدراسات  
الاجتماعية



science  
مادة العلوم

# Revision

## Days of the week

## ايام الاسبوع



Friday الجمعة



Saturday السبت



Sunday الأحد



Monday الإثنين



Tuesday الثلاثاء



Wednesday الأربعاء



Thursday الخميس

## Seasons of the year

## فصول السنة



winter الشتاء



spring الربيع



summer الصيف



fall الخريف



cold بارد



sunny مشمس



hot حار



rainy ممطر

## Months of the year

## شهور السنة



January  
يناير



February  
فبراير



March  
مارس



April  
أبريل



May  
مايو



June  
يونيو



July  
يوليو



August  
أغسطس



September  
سبتمبر



October  
أكتوبر



November  
نوفمبر



December  
ديسمبر

## At the bazaar

## في البازار



bazaar  
سوق شرقي



earrings  
حلق



bracelet  
إسورة



ring  
خاتم



market  
سوق



necklace  
عقد



jewelry  
حلي / مجوهرات



fabric  
قماش



perfume  
عطر / برفان

## Digital Technology

## التكنولوجيا الرقمية



internet  
شبكة الإنترنت



computer  
كمبيوتر



watch videos  
يشاهد فيديوهات



website  
موقع على الإنترنت

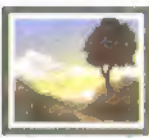


photo  
صورة



download  
ينزل / يحمل بيانات



tablet  
تابليت (كمبيوتر لوحي)



notebook  
كراسة



## Revision



cell phone  
هاتف محمول



keyboard  
لوحة المفاتيح



mouse  
فأرة الكمبيوتر



information  
معلومات



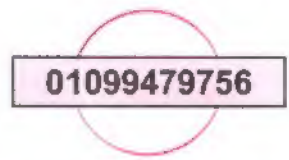
screen  
شاشة



arrow  
سهم



address  
عنوان مكان



telephone number  
رقم التليفون



password  
كلمة السر



keyword  
كلمة مفتاحية



search  
يبحث



search engine  
محرك بحث

## Parts of the body / أجزاء الجسم



foot  
قدم



feet  
أقدام



leg  
رجل



mouth  
فم



arm  
ذراع



nose  
أنف



eye  
عين



hand  
يد



knee  
ركبة



heart  
قلب



skin  
جلد



bone  
عظمة



hair  
شعر



teeth  
أسنان



stomach  
معدة





## Feelings

## المشاعر

happy  
سعيدsad  
حزينhungry  
جوعانthirsty  
عطشانangry  
غاضبexcited  
متحمسtired  
متعب

## At home

## في المنزل

cupboard  
خزانة/دولابtable  
ترابيزة / منضدةtelevision  
تليفزيونchair  
كرسيarmchair  
كرسي ذو مسندينclock  
ساعة حائطbookcase  
خزانة كتبcouch  
كنبةlamp  
مصباح / اباجرة

## Prepositions of place

## حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

between  
بينon  
علىbehind  
خلفnext to  
بجوارin  
في

## B Revision on Language Functions مراجعة على الوظائف اللغوية

- Where are you from?

- I'm from America.

\_\_\_\_\_

- I'm from France. I'm French.

\_\_\_\_\_

1  
لتسأل شخص  
عن بلده  
نستخدم

2  
لتقول بلدك  
وجنسياتك  
نستخدم

What's your favorite month?

ولاجابة نقول:

I like + (الشهر) + best + because it's + هذا الفصل .

- What's your favorite month?

- I like January best because it's cold.

\_\_\_\_\_

- When is your birthday? - My birthday is on March 11<sup>th</sup>.

\_\_\_\_\_

3  
لتسأل  
شخص  
عن الشهر  
المفضل له

4  
لتسأل  
شخص  
عن  
يوم ميلاده

- What would you like (to eat)?

- I'd like (would like) + الطعام لاجابة

- I'd like pasta and chicken, please.

\_\_\_\_\_

5  
للسؤال في  
مطعم عن  
الطعام الذي  
تريده

هل تريد بعض من (الطعام)? ? نوع الطعام + Would you like some

- Would you like some fries?

Yes, please. نعم من فضلك . لا شكرا لك . No, thank you.

\_\_\_\_\_

6  
ويمكن  
أن نسأل  
باستخدام

I prefer + الطعام.

- I prefer potatoes.

7  
لتقول أنا  
افضل نوع من  
الطعام





## Revision on Grammar

## مراجعة على القواعد اللغوية

I → **am** = ('m)      He / She / It → **is** = ('s)

We / You / They → **are** = ('re)

Verb to be  
(present)  
فعل يكون  
في المضارع

- I'm a doctor.
- She's my mother.
- They're happy.

2

◀ تنقسم الأفعال في الماضي البسيط إلى أفعال منتظمة وهي الأفعال التي تكون

Past simple  
زمن الماضي  
البسيط

منها الماضي بإضافة (ied - d - ed) إلى مصدر الفعل:

cook → **cooked**      travel → **traveled**

◀ وهناك أفعال تسمى الأفعال غير المنتظمة وهي الأفعال التي لا يضاف لها (ed) في الماضي وتحفظ كما هي:

do → **did**

give → **gave**

◀ نستخدم زمن الماضي للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي.  
- يتكون الماضي البسيط من:

Subject (فاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل

- I **bought** a present yesterday.

= لنفي الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط نستخدم:

مصدر الفعل + **didn't** + inf. + فاعل

- We **didn't work** for the test.

= للسؤال في زمن الماضي البسيط نستخدم:

? مصدر الفعل + **inf.** + فاعل + **did** + كلمة استفهام

- What **did** you do yesterday?

- We **went** to the park.

= هناك كلمات تدل على الماضي البسيط مثل:

yesterday / last (week - month year) / ago / in 2020



## Revision

- نستخدم (and) للربط بين جملتين لهما نفس الأفكار لاضافة فكرة مشابهة لما ذكرناه سابقا.

- I like ice cream **and** chocolate.

- نستخدم (so) للربط بين جملتين لنبين النتيجة.

- She has a present **so** she is happy.

- نستخدم (but) للربط بين جملتين متناقضتين أو جملة مثبتة والاخرى منفية.

- He wants to call his dad, **but** he doesn't have a cell phone.

3

And, so  
and but

• نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن شئ يحدث الان (اثناء الكلام).

• يتكون زمن المضارع المستمر كما يلي:

1

I

He / She / It اسم مفرد

You / We / They / اسم جمع

2

am

+ is

are

3

+ verb + ing

4

Present  
continuous  
زمن المضارع  
المستمر

- I'm drawing a cat.

• للسؤال ماذا تفعل؟ (في المضارع المستمر)

- What **are** you **doing**? ماذا تفعل؟

- I **am** taking a photo.

• وللإجابة نقول:

• لنفي الفعل في زمن المضارع المستمر نضع **not** بين **am / is / are** والفعل.

1

I

He / She / It / اسم مفرد

You / We / They / اسم جمع

2

am

+ is

are

3

+ not + verb + ing

4

- I am **not** playing sports.

- He is **not** taking photos.

◀ نستخدم (at) مع الوقت:

- I start school **at** eight o'clock.

◀ نستخدم (in) مع اوقات اليوم :

- **in** the morning / **in** the afternoon / **in** the evening

◀ نستخدم (on) مع ايام الاسبوع:

- I have no school **on** Friday.

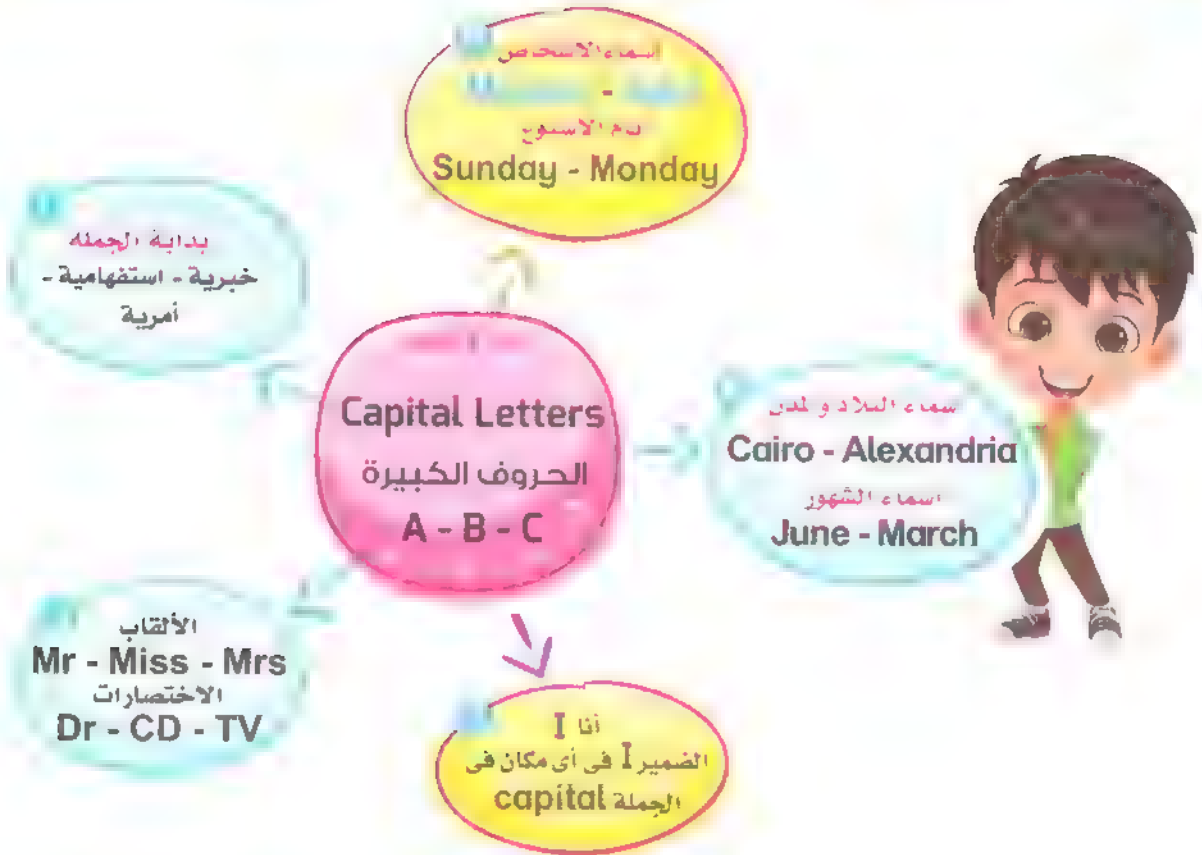
5

Prepositions  
حروف الجر



# Punctuation

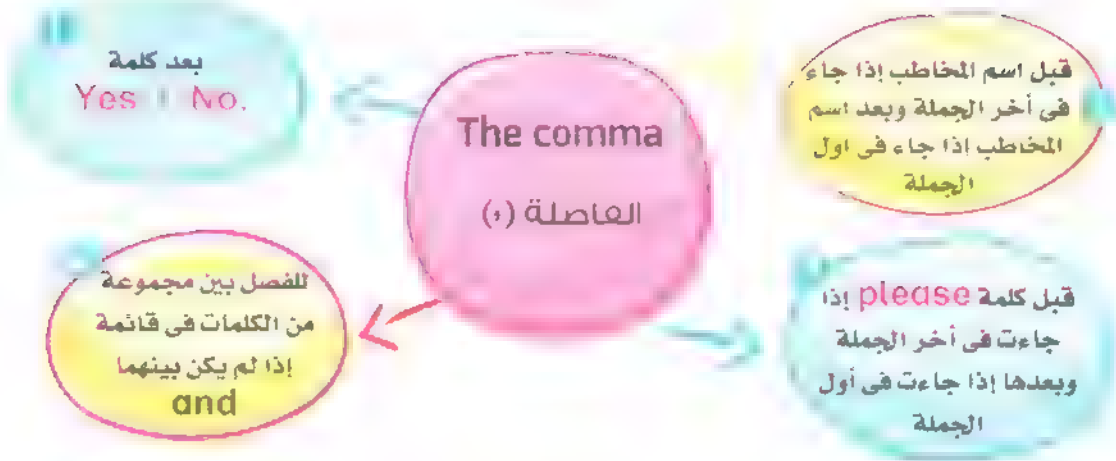
ABC



## Examples:

1. **Mr** Hisham is a doctor. (جملة خبرية)
2. **O**pen the window. (جملة أمرية)
3. **W**hat's your name? (جملة استفهامية)
4. **I** want some water. **I**'m thirsty. (الضمير I)
5. We visited **A**lexandria in **J**uly. (أسماء مدن وشهور)
6. **M**rs Noha visited the zoo on **M**onday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)

## Revision



### Examples:

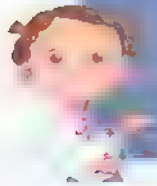
- , they are. / , they aren't. (بعد)
- I want , and . (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات في قائمة)
- Come here, . / , come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- Give me this book, . / , give me this book. (كلمة)



1. We are pupils. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close your eyes. (جملة أمرية)
3. Where's your book? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hello! Asharf. (علامة تعجب)







# General Activities

## 1 Choose the right answer:

احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A: Where are you from? B: I'm from **Egypt - Chinese - Egyptian**.
2. I have no school **(in - of - on)** Friday.
3. October is my favorite **(color - month - day)**.
4. She's **(drawing - draw - draws)** a picture.
5. What **(do - does - did)** you do yesterday?

1. I watch videos on my **(tablet - book - pen)**.
2. I like ice cream **(but - and - so)** chocolate.
3. I'd **(like - to like - liked)** chicken, please.
4. I **(visit - visits - visited)** the museum last week.
5. The **(heart - skin - stomach)** digests our food.

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

tired - hot - going - swim

My favorite season is the summer. It's very ❶ in the summer. I can go to the beach and ❷ in the sea with my family. I enjoy ❸ to Alexandria.

finish - school - play - math

I'm Samy. I'm in primary three. I start ❶ at eight o'clock. In the morning we have writing and ❷. We have science and English in the afternoon. I ❸ school around two o'clock.



**Write two sentences under each picture:**

اكتب جملتين تحت كل صورة:



**China - Chinese**



**summer - beach**



**cell phone - games**



**kitchen - cook dinner**

**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات ترقيم للآتي:

1. where's the park -----
2. it's on the computer -----
3. do you like ice cream -----
4. my knee hurts -----
5. i like cold weather -----
6. what did Maha do yesterday -----
7. there's a couch in the living room -----
8. when is your birthday -----
9. there's a table next to the armchair -----
10. can you download photos -----





## How to write a paragraph?

كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية؟

### ال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة موضوع من ١٨ كلمة من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة ويعطي للتلاميذ عناصر مساعده مثل كلمس أو سؤالين أو ملف حقائق لذلك يقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن تتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها في اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

#### أولا ترتيب الجملة

1	2	3
اسم شخص Adel	مضارع بسيط / مستمر is eating / eat / eats	مكان / ظرف زمان / صفة / حال school / yesterday tall / well
مكان park	ماضي بسيط / مستمر was going / went	
شيء table		

صفة + verb to be + فاعل

Eman is hungry.

وظيفة + verb to be + فاعل

Ashraf is a doctor.

مكان + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

We went to the circus.

زمن + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

We play on Friday.

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

I help her.

الساعة + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

I sleep at 10 o'clock.

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ١٨ كلمة عن:

#### Your weekend

Guiding words

shopping - bought

I went shopping last weekend. I went with my mother by taxi. I bought a blue T-shirt and white socks. Then, I ate ice cream. I had a great time.

## Tip to answer the comprehension questions

### 1- اولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1 قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) في النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is.
- The passage is mainly about

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية في النص

- هي النقطة الأساسية التي يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.

- تكون جملة وليست سؤالاً.

- الجمل الأخرى في النص تعطي تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.

- غالباً تكون في أول جملة أو آخر جملة في النص.

#### لاحظ المثال الآتي

- ما باللون الأحمر هي الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هي التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I had a new dress. My new dress is green and blue. My dress is very beautiful.  
I will wear it on my birthday party.

2 قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات في جملة معينة في القطعة ثم تحد سؤال اختيار من متعدد

يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....

- The underlined word refers to

### ثانياً: أسئلة (open-ended) استفسامية

3 قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) لأحد الفقرات في النص في جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the first second third paragraph (into one sentence)

كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو أكثر

1- حدد اسم الشخص أو الشئ أو الحيوان الأساسي بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها

2- حدد أهم شئ يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشئ أو الحيوان واستخدم أهم الأفعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك وممكن

استخدام أفعال أخرى تؤدي نفس المعنى.

3- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية أو الغير أساسية أو المعلومات الأقل أهمية .

4- اختب الفكرة الأساسية في حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب.



## أمثلة مجابة

### 1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in a sentence

I went to Alexandria last summer. I went with my family. We saw the beach and swam in the sea. It was a great holiday.

تتبع الخطوات السابقة:

١- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل أساسي بمدينة **Alexandria**

٢- أهم ما يحصهم هو الذهاب إلى الاسكندرية ومادا فعلت هناك والأفعال التي تعبر عن ذلك **went / saw / swam**

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

#### Summary

I went to Alexandria, saw the beach and swam in the sea.

### 2- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own words

My brother is a vet. He likes helping sick animals. He is kind. I want to be a vet like my brother.

١- أهم شخص **My brother**

٢- وأهم شيء يخصه أنه طبيب بيطري وأنا أريد أن أكون مثله.

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤ - قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

#### Summary

My brother is a vet and I want to be like my brother.





# Lesson

## Let's remember!

1 What can you see in the photo? Look and say:

ماذا ترى في الصورة ؟ انظر وهل :



2 Read and match the questions and answers:

اقرأ ثم صل السؤال بإجابته :

1 How tall is the Cairo Tower?



a. I visited the bazaar. I bought a bag.

2 What would you like?



b. It's 187 meters.

3 Where are you from?



c. It's on January 19th.

4 What did you do yesterday?



d. I'm from China. I'm Chinese.

5 How long is the Sphinx?



e. It's seventy-three meters long.

6 When's your birthday?



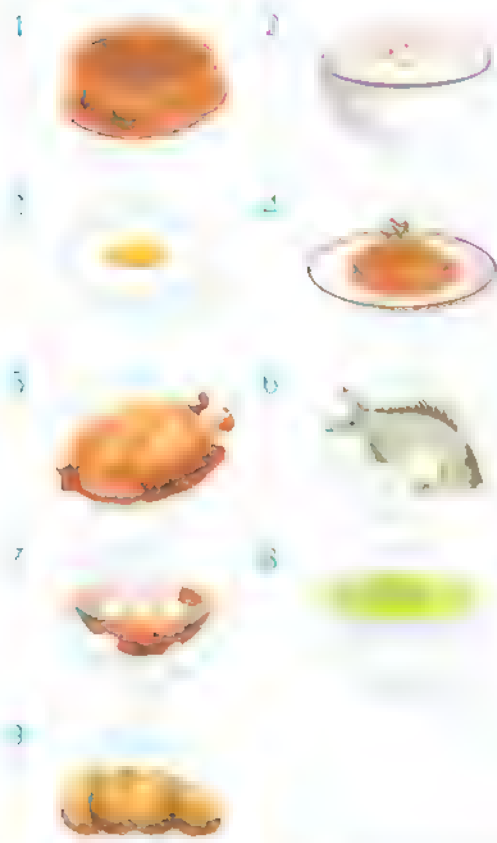
f. I'd like some water, please.

Let's remember!

3

Look and write: Write the mystery word in the grid.

انظر واكتب ما هي كلمة السر المظلمة باللون الأصفر؟



				b	r	e	a	d	

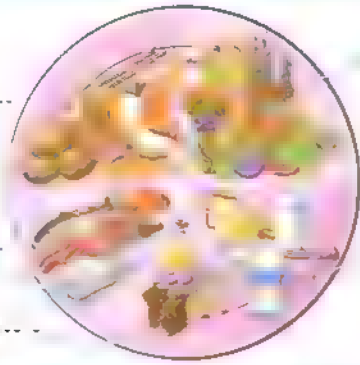
The mystery word is: -----

4

Look and write: Write the food groups in the grid.

انظر واكتب

bread, cereals and potatoes - fruit and vegetables  
milk and dairy products - meat and fish - sugar and fats



5

What is a healthy diet? Look at the food pyramid and write the food groups in the boxes.

ما هو النظام الغذائي الصحي؟ انظر وقل :



# Lesson 2 Let's remember!

## 1 Read and order:

اقرأ ورتب:

April



March



February



September



June



December



October



July



August



May



January



November



## 2 Listen, answer and write:

استمع واجب واكتب:

استمع إلى الأسئلة



Tapescript

نص الاستماع



1- What's the weather like?

2- Where's he from?

3- What do you drink for breakfast?

4- What did you buy?

5- How much is it?

6- What is it?

7- What's it made of?

8- How much money do you have?

1



2



3

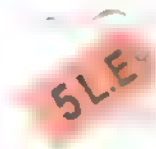


4



It's sunny.

5



6



7



8





3

اكتب عن عطلة نهاية الاسبوع الخاصة بك. يمكنك استخدام الكلمات التي بالاسفل:

go - see - buy - have

I went shopping last weekend. I -----

I went shopping.  
I .....

I

I had a great time!

4

اقرأ واضف الحروف الكبيرة في مكانها الصحيح.

hi! I'm shorouk! i live in alexandria. the library of alexandria  
is a big and famous library in my city yesterday it was sunny  
my family visited the park at the montaza palace.



Marks:30

Time: 04:30 (45 min)

### A-Listening (6 Marks)

#### Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d: (6 Marks)

A text about **FORTY (40)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. (One mark and a half each)

### B-Reading (14 Marks)

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

**FOUR (4)** MCQs related to vocabulary based on the Set Books are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. (One mark each)

#### Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4 Marks)

An unseen text from **FORTY (40)** to **FIFTY (50)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE (1)** of the **FIVE (5)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full. (One mark each)

#### Read the text and answer the questions: (6 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **SEVENTY (70)** to **EIGHTY (80)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FOUR**. Learners are asked to answer:

A **TWO (2)** MCQ questions with **FOUR (4)** options each dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.

(One mark each)

**B TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with TWO (2) of the following reading comprehension skills:**

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text.

**(Two marks each)**

---

### **C- Writing (10 Marks)**

**7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4 Marks)**

**FOUR (4)** structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets. **(One mark each)**

**6 Punctuate the following: (1 Mark)**

A simple statement (sentence or question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks is provided (**Capital letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly. **(Half a mark each)**

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (5 Marks)**

Learners are asked to write a paragraph of not less than **EIGHTEEN (18)** words using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be words, questions, fact file..... etc.  
**(One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary- One mark for grammar- One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation)**



# I discover myself

## I feel good!

أشعر أنى بخير



### Objectives of the Unit

### أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about foods and how to keep healthy.  
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع الطعام المختلفة وكيف يحافظ على صحته.
2. Practice making sentences with **and** or **but**.  
- يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل باستخدام (و) أو (لكن).
3. Read and listen to a Chinese folktale.  
- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة شعبية صينية.
4. Distinguish long and short vowels.  
- يفرق الطالب بين الأصوات المتحركة الممتدة والقصيرة.
5. Talk about a place in Egypt.  
- يتكلم الطالب عن مكان في مصر.
6. Research and make a presentation.  
- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وعرض تقديمي.

# Lesson 1

## Food and drink



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



tomato

ثمرة طماطم



rice\*

أرز



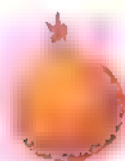
chicken

دجاجة / لحم دجاج



potato

ثمرة بطاطس



onion\*

بصلة



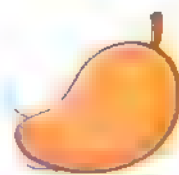
banana

موزة



grapes

عنب



mango

ثمرة مانجو



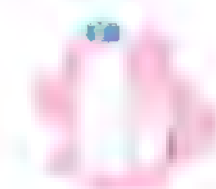
watermelon

بطيخة



sugarcane

قصب السكر



milk

لبن



breakfast

الافطار

### Meals

الوجبات



lunch

الغداء



dinner

العشاء

# Unit 4

I feel good

## Other words

ready	جاهز	delicious*	لذيذ
vegetables	خضراوات	country	دولة
fruit	فاكهة	healthy	صحي
special* food	طعام مميز	Egyptian*	مصري
What else?	ماذا أيضاً؟	farmers	فلاحين / مزارعين
yum = yummy	لذيذ		

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
produce ينتج	produced
raise يربي (للحيوانات)	raised
look يبدو	looked

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
grow يزرع	grew
make يعد الطعام	made
eat يأكل	ate
keep يربي (حيوانات)	kept
feed يطعم	fed
think يعتقد	thought

**raise** يربي : To keep and feed chickens to get eggs and meat.

## Language Functions

- It looks delicious. / Yum / Yummy

Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل

- Let's eat.

للتعبير أن  
الطعام شهي  
أو لذيذ

2  
للاقتراح  
نستخدم:

## Grammar

- banana → banana<sup>s</sup>

onion → onion<sup>s</sup>

الاسماء التي تنتهي بالحروف (ch | sh | ss | o | s - x) يضاف آخرها (es) عند الجمع.

- mango → mango<sup>es</sup>

potato → potato<sup>es</sup>

- milk - rice

وهناك أسماء لا تجمع مثل بعض الأطعمة وكل الشروبات:

كلمة (chicken) لا تجمع لو كنا نقصد لحم الدجاج وتجمع لو اشرنا إلى الدجاج الحي.



## Study the following

- 1 Lunch is ready. - الغداء جاهز.
- 2 I made some special food for us. - أعدت طعام خاص لنا.
- 3 The food looks delicious. - يبدو الطعام شهى.
- 4 Which food comes from our country? - أى طعام يأتي من بلادنا؟
- 5 We grow rice in Egypt. - نزرع الأرز في مصر.
- 6 We raise chickens in Egypt. - نحن نربي الدجاج في مصر.
- 7 Egyptian farmers produce many things. - يُنتج الفلاحون المصريون أشياء عديدة.
- 8 What meal are they having? - ما الوجبة التي يأكلوها؟

### Listen and read: Where are Mom and Maged?

استمع واقرأ. أين الأم وماجد؟

**Mom** : Lunch is ready. I made some special food for us.

استمع إلى النص:



**Maged** : Mom, it looks delicious!

**Mom** : Which food comes from our country, do you think?

**Maged** : I think we grow \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt.

**Mom** : Yes, that's right. What else?

**Maged** : Hmmm, I think we \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt.

**Mom** : Yes, and tomatoes and onions. Egyptian farmers produce many things you see on this table. Let's eat!

**Maged** : Yum!



Mom and Maged



### Listen again and answer the question

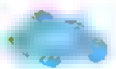
استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى واجب عن الأسئلة.

1. What meal are they having?

☐ a breakfast

☐ b lunch

☐ c dinner





I feel good

2. What do Egyptian farmers produce?

☐ fruit and vegetables

☐ chickens

☐ both a and b

3. Maged thinks that Egyptian food is .....

☐ healthy

☐ yummy

☐ both a and b

### 3 Look and write

انظر واكتب

bananas - chicken - grapes - mangoes - milk

onions - potatoes - rice - sugarcane - watermelon

1



chicken

2



3



4



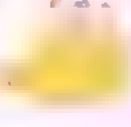
5



6



7



8



9



10



### Find out



What other animals do farmers raise in Egypt?

ما الحيوانات الأخرى التي يربّيها المزارعون في مصر؟

Egyptian farmers raise chickens and sheep.

know?

هل تعلم؟

Did you know that in Japan you can buy a watermelon that looks like a pyramid?

هل تعلم أن اليابان تستطيع أن تشتري بطيخة علي شكل هرم؟



# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

لنستمع الإجابة الصحيحة



1. Farmers are good for our .....

☐ a city

☐ b street

☐ c park

☐ d country

2. Farmers grow .....

☐ a bananas and apples

☐ b carrots and onions

☐ c mangoes and potatoes

☐ d grapes and rice

3. Farmers raise .....

☐ a birds

☐ b dogs

☐ c chickens

☐ d cats

4. There is ..... food in Egypt.

☐ a delicious

☐ b healthy

☐ c bad

☐ d unhealthy

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The food looks ..... I like it.

☐ a bad

☐ b cold

☐ c delicious

☐ d dirty

2. Let's ..... our lunch.

☐ a eats

☐ b eat

☐ c eating

☐ d ate

3. We raise ..... to get meat.

☐ a chickens

☐ b onions

☐ c tomatoes

☐ d trees

4. Egyptian farmers ..... rice in Egypt.

☐ a raise

☐ b grow

☐ c think

☐ d play

5. A: ..... meal are they having? B: Lunch.

☐ a When

☐ b Where

☐ c Who

☐ d What

6. Farmers grow many fruits like .....

☐ a mangoes

☐ b beans

☐ c carrots

☐ d rice

(2024)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.





I feel good

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

things - animals - ready - produce - fruit

Egyptian farmers are important in our country. They ❶ \_\_\_\_\_ our food. They grow many ❷ \_\_\_\_\_. They grow ❸ \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt. They can keep many ❹ \_\_\_\_\_. They can raise chickens, too.

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Let's ..... (eating) our lunch.
- There are some ..... (potato) in the kitchen.
- What meal are they ..... (have)?
- I want to eat a ..... (bananas).

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what animals do farmers raise in Egypt

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقره إشتائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

grow - raise

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة





# Lesson 2

## I am healthy

استمع إلى المفردات:



play football  
يلعب كرة القدم



play basketball  
يلعب كرة السلة



drink water  
يشرب مياه



exercise  
يتمرن

Healthy  
صحي



eat vegetables  
يأكل خضراوات



drink cola  
يشرب كولا

Unhealthy  
غير صحي



eat candy  
يأكل حلوى



play video games  
يلعب ألعاب الفيديو

### Other words

### الكلمات الأخرى

on the weekend

في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

busy

مشغول

really

بالفعل

scientist

عالم

different

مختلف

plants

نباتات

awesome

رائع

interesting

شيق

milkshake

مخفوق اللبن

burger

سندوتش برجر

wheelchair

كرسي متحرك

salads

انواع سلطة

fresh juices

عصائر طازجة

week

أسبوع

Help your child learn about healthy and unhealthy things. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الأشياء الصحية وغير الصحية.



# Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

practice يمارس  
talk يتكلم  
look at ينظر إلى  
walk يمشي

Past ماضٍ

practiced  
talked  
looked at  
walked

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

do يفعل  
drink يشرب

Past ماضٍ

did  
drank

## Grammar

نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة أي أنها تضيف للمعنى،

And و  
/ But لكن

- I play tennis **and** basketball.
- I like fruit **and** vegetables.

ونستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

- I don't eat candy, **but** I like fruit.
- The desert is very interesting, **but** it is very hot.

## Study the following

- 1 Do you think you're healthy? هل تعتقد أنك بصحة جيدة؟
- 2 I do a lot of sport at school. أمارس أنواع كثيرة من الرياضة في المدرسة.
- 3 I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. لا أتناول الحلوى، لكنني أحب الفاكهة.
- 4 I'm in a wheelchair basketball team. أنا في فريق كرة السلة للكراسي المتحركة.
- 5 I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. أشرب المياه الغازية (الكولا) لكنني أريد شرب المزيد من الماء.
- 6 Dad is a scientist and he likes looking at animals and plants. أباي عالم وهو يحب أن ينظر إلى الحيوانات والنباتات.
- 7 The desert is very interesting, but it is very hot.. الصحراء شيقة جداً لكنها حارة جداً.
- 8 I want something sweet. أريد شيء ما فيه سكريات.
- 9 I don't play video games because I'm very busy. لا أعب ألعاب الفيديو لأنني مشغول جداً.

1

Label the photos:

استمع إلى ( آدم ودارين وجودي ) حيث يتكلموا حول أن تكون بصحة جيدة. وضع الاسم تحت الصورة،

Tapescript



استمع إلى النص:



**Narrator** : 1

**Interviewer** Do you think you're healthy, Judy?

**Judy** : Yes, I do. I do a lot of **sport**<sup>(1)</sup> at school. On the **weekend**<sup>(2)</sup>, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the **different houses**<sup>(3)</sup> and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. My mom makes an **awesome**<sup>(4)</sup> banana **milkshake**<sup>(5)</sup>!.

**Arabic Meaning**

- ١- رياضة
- ٢- في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
- ٣- منازل مختلفة
- ٤- رائع
- ٥- محفوق اللبن
- ٦- فريق كرة السلة
- للكراسي المتحركة
- ٧- ثلاث مرات
- ٨- عالم
- ٩- أحياناً
- ١- فقط

**Narrator** : 2

**Interviewer** Do you think you're healthy, Adam?

**Adam** : Yes, I'm in a **wheelchair basketball team**<sup>(6)</sup> at school. We practice **three times**<sup>(7)</sup> every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I play basketball in the park.

**Narrator** : 3

**Interviewer** Do you think you're healthy, Dareen?

**Dareen** : Yes, I think I'm healthy, My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a **scientist**<sup>(8)</sup> and he likes looking at animals and plants. We go with him every weekend. It's very interesting, but it's very hot **sometimes**<sup>(9)</sup>! I **only**<sup>(10)</sup> drink water because I don't like cola. I love burgers, but I only eat one a week. My mom makes yummy salads.

Help your child listen and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.



1



بوتل

2



3



2

استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى واجب عن الأسئلة:

1. Who never drinks cola?

2. Who plays basketball?

3. Who doesn't eat candy?

3

استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى وأكمل الجمل باستخدام (و) أو (لكن):

1. I don't eat candy, ..... I eat fruit when I want something sweet.

2. I don't drink cola, ..... I drink fresh juices.

3. I play basketball ..... I play football in the park.

4. Dad is a scientist ..... he likes looking at animals and plants.

5. It's a very interesting place, ..... it's very hot sometimes!



# Activities



## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

but - healthy - drink - eats - walk

My name is Laila. I like sports. I want to be **a** . . . , so I play football and basketball. I **b** . . . . . cold, **c** . . . . . I want to drink more water. I **d** . . . . . home from school every day.

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Gamal. I'm ten years old. I'm in primary four. I'm healthy. I eat fruit and vegetables. I walk to the park. I play football and basketball. I never drink cola. I like water very much. My favorite fruits are apples and oranges. My mom makes yummy salads.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Gamal is . . . . . years old.  
**a** eleven                      **b** nine                      **c** seven                      **d** ten
2. Gamal never drinks . . . . .  
**a** cola                      **b** fruit                      **c** juice                      **d** water

### B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Gamal's mom make?  
.....
4. Summarize the text in one sentence.  
.....

## 3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I want to play football, . . . . . **(and)** my leg hurts. (2026) القاهرة الزين
2. The farmers grow rice, tomatoes . . . . . **(but)** potatoes in Egypt. (2026)
3. I like to play football . . . . . **(but)** tennis. (2026)





## I feel good

4. I don't eat candy, ..... (and) I eat fruit. (2024)
5. He can speak English ..... (or) Arabic.
6. I eat vegetables ..... (but) I exercise.
7. I want to play football, ..... (and) I'm ill.
8. I practice basketball ..... (but) football.
9. I like chocolate ..... (but) ice cream.
10. Nabil speaks English, ..... (and) he can't speak Chinese.

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. do you think you're healthy (2024)

2. my mom makes yummy salads

### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

water - sports

مجاوب عنه اخر الوحدة



# Lesson 5

## The empty pot: A folktale from China Pronunciation and Math



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



emperor امبراطور



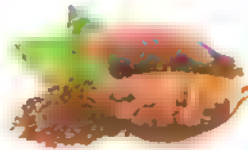
palace قصر



king ملك



بستاني



seeds بذور



empty صفيح زرع فارغ

### Other words

### كلمات أخرى

folktale

قصة شعبية

next

القادم

competition

مسابقة

honest

أمين

China

الصين

honesty

الأمانة

important man

رجل مهم

dead

ميت

nothing

لا شيء

everyone

كل شخص / الجميع

### Conjugation of verbs

### صيغة الفعل

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

live يعيش

lived

take يأخذ

took

water يسقى الزرع

watered

grow ينمو

grew

plant يزرع

planted

put يضع

put

try يحاول

tried

bring يحضر

brought

Help your child learn new words.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

look after يعتني بـ  
lie يكذب

looked after  
lied

win يفوز  
lose يخسر

won  
lost

emperor

أمبراطور

someone who is like a king

شخص مثل الملك

palace

قصر

a place where an emperor lives

مكان يعيش فيه الأمبراطور

honest

أمين

someone doesn't lie

شخص لا يكذب

### Study the following

- 1 The most important man in China was the emperor.  
- كان الأمبراطور أهم رجل في الصين.
- 2 He lived in a beautiful palace.  
- عاش في قصر جميل.
- 3 There will be a competition.  
- سوف تكون هناك مسابقة.
- 4 I will give a seed to each gardener.  
- سوف أعطي بذرة لكل بستاني.
- 5 Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden.  
- كان تشن ماهرًا في زراعة الأشياء والأهتمام بحديقته.
- 6 He put the seed in the sun and gave it water.  
- وضع البذرة في الشمس وأعطاه الماء.
- 7 The seeds I gave everyone were dead.  
- البذور التي أعطيتها لكل شخص كان ميتة.
- 8 You will be the next emperor.  
- سوف تكون الأمبراطور القادم.
- 9 Honesty is more important than winning.  
- الأمانة أهم من الفوز.





1

Read and listen to the audio.

اقرأ واستمع. أين عاش تشن؟

## The Empty Pot: A Folktale from China!

استمع إلى النص.



Cheng lived long ago in China. The most important man in China was the emperor<sup>(1)</sup>. He lived in a beautiful palace<sup>(2)</sup>. One day the emperor said, "There will be a competition<sup>(3)</sup>. I will give a seed to each gardener<sup>(4)</sup>. The one who can grow the most beautiful plant from the seed will be the next emperor."



"Take the pot and the seed. Plant it." says the emperor. "Make it grow into a beautiful plant. Then bring the plant back to me."

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after<sup>(5)</sup> his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But nothing<sup>(6)</sup> happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew.

At the palace, all the gardeners have beautiful plants.

"Where is your plant?" the emperor asks Cheng.

"I worked very hard. I watered it every day," says Cheng. "But it didn't grow."

"Then you win!" says the emperor. "The seeds I gave everyone<sup>(7)</sup> were dead<sup>(8)</sup>. The seeds cannot grow. Only you are good and honest<sup>(9)</sup>. So you will be the next<sup>(10)</sup> emperor!".

### Match the words.

- ١- امبراطور
- ٢- قصر
- ٣- مسابقة
- ٤- بستاني
- ٥- الإعتناء
- ٦- لا شيء
- ٧- كل شخص
- ٨- ميتة
- ٩- أمين
- ١٠- القادم

2

Circle the correct meaning:

ضع دائرة حول المعنى الصحيح.

1. An emperor is someone who is like a ..

☒ a king

☐ b farmer

2. A palace is where an emperor ..

☐ a travels

☐ b lives



3. Someone who is honest \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a does not lie      ☐ b lies

4. In a competition someone tries to \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a win      ☐ b lose

3 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى واجب بـ (صح) أم (خطأ):

True False

- ☐ 1 Cheng was good at growing things.
- ☐ 2 Cheng didn't like being in his garden.
- ☐ 3 The emperor gave all the gardeners a seed to plant.
- ☐ 4 Cheng's seed grew into a big, beautiful flower.
- ☐ 5 Cheng looked after the seed, and gave it sun and water.
- ☐ 6 Cheng was sad and took the empty pot to the emperor.
- ☐ 7 Cheng wasn't the next emperor as his seed didn't grow.

4 What is the moral of this story?

ما الدرس الأخلاقي للقصة؟

- ☐ a Winning is very important. الفوز مهم جدًا.
- ☐ b Honesty is more important than winning. الأمانة أهم من الفوز.
- ☐ c Everyone should plant a seed. يجب أن يزرع كل شخص بذرة.



# Pronunciation

- ندرس في هذا الدرس الاصوات المتحركة القصيرة والممتدة.

- الاصوات القصيرة غالباً تحتوى على حرف متحرك واحد (bag / pen / mix / mom / bus)

- الاصوات الممتدة تحتوى على صوتين متحركين (cake / feet / rice / nose / blue)

استمع إلى المفردات:



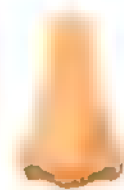
mom أم



bag حقيبة



rice أرز



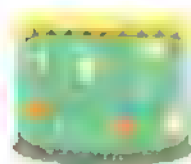
nose أنف

Short  
vowels



mix يخلط

Long  
vowels



cake تورتة

- ندرس أيضاً البادئة (re) التي تأتي أول الفعل بمعنى يعيد عمل.

البادئة (re) تعنى مرة أخرى Prefix (re) means again

redo

repaint يعيد فعل / يجدد

يعيد دهان

reclean

remake يعيد تنظيف

يعيد عمل

replant

يعيد زراعة

Help your child learn about short and long vowels. ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن الاصوات المتحركة القصيرة والممتدة.



I feel good



Look at the pictures and complete the words

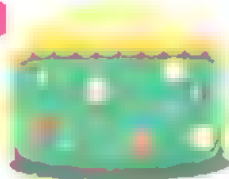
انظر إلى الصور واكمل الكلمات

1



b \_ g

2



c \_ k \_

3



m \_ m

4



n \_ s \_

5



m \_ x

6



r \_ c \_



Read and change the verbs with "re":

اقرأ وغير الافعال باستخدام البادئة (re):

The prefix "re" means "again".

The seeds didn't grow. Cheng wanted to replant them.

◀ لاحظ (again) تعنى مرة أخرى ولاعادة كتابة الجمل نحذف again ونضع (re) قبل الفعل.

1. Ramez painted his house again. He repainted his house

2. Nada cleaned her bike again. She recleaned her bike

3. The chef made rice again.

4. Shaimaa did her homework again.



# CLIL MATH

## Comparing large digits / Ascending order

مقارنة الأعداد الكبيرة / الترتيب التصاعدي

- Bassem wants to be healthy, so he walks 178,880 meters a day.

يريد باسم أن يكون بصحة جيدة، لذلك هو يمشي ١٧٨,٨٨٠ متر كل يوم.

< نتعلم أولاً العلامات الرياضية حيث: (=) تعنى يساوى / (<) تعنى أصغر من / (>) تعنى أكبر من.

- ندرس فى هذا الدرس مقارنة الأعداد الكبيرة كمايلي:

١. بشكل عام العدد الذى به ارقام أكثر هو العدد الأكبر.

53,978

100,000

نلاحظ هنا أن العدد (100,000) يتكون من (6) أرقام والعدد (53,978) يتكون من (5) أرقام إذا العدد الأكبر هو (100,000).

٢. إذا تساوى العددين نقارن أول رقم بالعدد الأول مع أول رقم بالعدد الآخر (مقارنة الرقم يكون من اليسار إلى اليمين).

612,345

512,345

هنا تساوى العددين فى عدد الأرقام. نبدأ المقارنة من أول رقم ونلاحظ أن  $6 < 5$  إذا 612,345 هو العدد الأكبر.

835,497

835,597

- عند مقارنة العددين نلاحظ تساوى أول ثلاثة أرقام (835) لكن  $5 > 4$  إذا العدد 835,597 هو الأكبر.

### Ascending order الترتيب التصاعدي

هو ترتيب الأعداد من الصغير إلى الكبير كما تعلمنا فى الفقرة السابقة نحدد من هو العدد الصغير والكبير ثم نرتب من أصغر عدد إلى أكبر عدد قارن الآتى:

87,909 - 87,092 - 87,990

87,092 < 87,909 < 87,990

Help your child learn about comparing large digits and ascending order.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن مقارنة الأعداد الكبيرة والترتيب التصاعدي.



I feel good



Look and say

انظر وقل:

544,432

five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two

178,880

one hundred, seventy-eight thousand and eight hundred and eighty



Put the numbers in order

ضع العلامة الصحيحة (< , > , =) أو -

1

655,534

<

698,881

2

10,000,000

ten million

3

100,000,000

99,999,999



Put the numbers in order

رتب الأرقام ترتيب تصاعدي:

1

87,909 - 87,092 - 87,990

2

233,346 - 10,009 - 20,665

3

20,000 - 20,310 - 19,311

Find out



The numerical digits we use today 1, 2 and 3 are based on the Hindu-Arabic numeral system. This system was developed over 1000 years ago. Can you find the smallest five-digit number?

إن الأعداد التي نستخدمها حالياً (1, 2, 3) مأخوذة من نظام العد الهندي العربي. تطور هذا النظام عبر ١٠٠٠ عام مضت. هل تستطيع معرفة أصغر عدد يتكون من خمسة أرقام؟ .....



# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.



1. The king lived in a .....  
☐ a garden      ☐ b palace      ☐ c flat      ☐ d school
2. Ali looked ..... the trees and flowers.  
☐ a after      ☐ b for      ☐ c at      ☐ d on
3. Ali found a bag of ..... coins.  
☐ a silver      ☐ b glass      ☐ c gold      ☐ d wood
4. Ali was ....., so the king was happy.  
☐ a bad      ☐ b careless      ☐ c funny      ☐ d honest

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The emperor lived in a beautiful .....  
☐ a desert      ☐ b garden      ☐ c school      ☐ d palace
2. We ..... our homework.  
☐ a recycled      ☐ b redid      ☐ c repainted      ☐ d recleaned
3. A/An ..... is someone who looks after gardens.  
☐ a scientist      ☐ b emperor      ☐ c gardener      ☐ d king
4. We put the ..... in the pot to grow.  
☐ a seeds      ☐ b water      ☐ c food      ☐ d candy
5. My friend is kind and .....  
☐ a dead      ☐ b honest      ☐ c bad      ☐ d unhealthy

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

competition - honest - palace - won - lie

I love my school. I learn many things there. Yesterday, our teacher taught us a great lesson. He told us to be ❶ ..... and never ❷ ..... Then, I entered a running ❸ ..... and I ❹ ..... the first prize.



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I read a folktale from China. It's about an emperor who lived in a big palace. One day, he asked the gardeners to come to his palace. He gave them seeds and empty pots. He told them the one who grew the most beautiful plant would be the next emperor. Cheng, the gardener, was good at growing things. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But Cheng's seed had no plants because it was dead. Cheng was honest, so he became the next emperor.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:**

1. I read a ..... from China.

☐ a picture☐ b folktale☐ c book☐ d paper

2. The emperor gave the gardeners .....

☐ a plants☐ b vegetables☐ c seeds☐ d flowers**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Why was Cheng the next emperor?

4. Did Cheng grow a beautiful plant?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The seeds ..... (**was**) dead.2. Cheng was looking ..... (**for**) his garden.3. Cheng ..... (**lives**) long ago in China.4. I want to plant a flower, ..... (**and**) I don't have seeds.**6 Punctuate the following:**

( ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي: )

1. where's your plant

2. all the seeds cannot grow

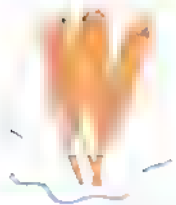


# Lesson 9

## Writing

### Key vocabulary

استمع الى المقدرات:



wheat قمح



Damietta governorate  
محافظة دمياط



nutrients  
عناصر غذائية



rice أرز



tomato  
ثمرة طماطم



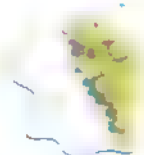
potato  
ثمرة بطاطس



guava  
ثمرة جوافة



lemons  
ليمون



grapes  
عنب



fisherman صياد



farmer فلاح



sheep خروف



cow بقرة



goat معرة

1,000

thousand ألف

1,000,000

million مليون



Damiat cheese جبنة دمياط

### Other words

كلمات أخرى



land

الأرض

part

جزء

rich

غني

crops

محاصيل

catch (fish)

بصطاد سمك

less than

أقل من

famous

مشهور

Help your child learn about Damietta governorate.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن محافظة دمياط.





## Study the following

- 1 The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients.  
- الأرض في محافظة دمياط غنية بالعناصر الغذائية.
- 2 Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea.  
- يصطاد الصيادون آلاف الأسماك من البحر.
- 3 Cows, goats and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too.  
- يعيش البقر والماعز والخراف في محافظة دمياط أيضًا.
- 4 Domiati cheese is very famous.  
- الجبنة الدمياطي مشهورة جدًا.
- 5 Life is good in Damietta.  
- الحياة رائعة في دمياط.

### Food from Damietta

استمع إلى النص:



The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas.

Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!



### 1 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False)

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى واجيب بـ (صح) ام (خطأ):

True False

- 1 Damietta has lots of food and animals.
- 2 The farmers grow a lot of fruit and vegetables.
- 3 The land in Damietta is not good for crops.
- 4 There aren't many lemons and grapes in Damietta.
- 5 Less than two million people live in Damietta.

2 Read the text and join the sentences below.

اقرأ النص واربط الجمل بنهايتها:

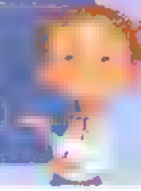
A

- 1 Damietta is famous
- 2 The animals you see
- 3 The farmers grow
- 4 About 1.5 million Egyptians

B

- a live in Damietta governorate.
- b tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, and guavas.
- c for Domiati cheese.
- d in Damietta are goats, cows and sheep.

# Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Damietta is a .....  
 a street                      b village                      c governorate                      d beach
2. The land in Damietta is rich in .....  
 a stars                      b birds                      c fish                      d nutrients
3. Domiati ..... is very famous.  
 a cheese                      b sheep                      c chicken                      d chips
4. .... catch thousands of fish in the sea.  
 a Fishermen                      b Farmers                      c Teachers                      d Mechanics

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

famous - potatoes - grow - thousands - live

Damietta is a good place to live in. Farmers can ❶ ..... many things there. They grow rice, tomatoes and ❷ .... Fishermen catch ❸ ..... of fish. You can eat Domiati cheese. It's very ❹ .....





### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واحب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed Ibrahim is in grade four at a primary school. He has two brothers. He plays football with his brothers. They live in Damietta. His dad has a beautiful farm. His dad is a farmer. He grows rice, tomatoes, and potatoes. He raises chickens and cows to get milk. He makes delicious cheese. Ahmed and his brother catch fish in the sea. Ahmed has many friends. He loves his city.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed's dad is a .....

☐ a fisherman

☐ b farmer

☐ c teacher

☐ d doctor

2. Ahmed's family live in .....

☐ a Cairo

☐ b Giza

☐ c Damietta

☐ d Alexandria

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. How many brothers does Ahmed have?

4. What did Ahmed's dad grow on his farm?

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- you can see animals in Damietta

2- life is good in Damietta

### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقبرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

grow - cheese

Damietta governorate

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة



# Review



## Food and drink

## الطعام والشراب



tomato

ثمرة طماطم



rice

أرز



chicken

دجاجة / لحم دجاج



potato

ثمرة بطاطس



onion

بصلة



mango

ثمرة مانجو



banana

موزة



grapes

عنب



watermelon

بطيخة



sugarcane

قصب السكر



milk

لبن

## Meals

## الوجبات



breakfast

الافطار



lunch

الغداء



dinner

العشاء

## Healthy

## صحي



play football

يلعب كرة القدم



play basketball

يلعب كرة السلة



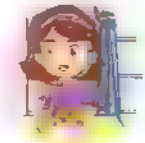
drink water

يشرب مياه



exercise

يتمرن



eat vegetables

يأكل خضراوات

## Unhealthy

## غير صحي



drink cola

يشرب كولا



eat candy

يأكل حلوى



play video games

يلعب ألعاب الفيديو





I feel good

## A folktale from China

## قصة شعبية



emperor  
امبراطور



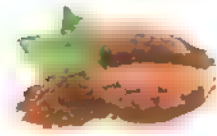
palace  
قصر



king  
ملك



gardener  
بستاني



seeds  
بذور



empty pot  
اصيص زرع فارغ

China  
honest

الصين  
أمين

competition

مسابقة

## Writing



Damietta governorate  
محافظة دمياط



guava  
جوافة



lemons  
ليمون



wheat  
قمح



fisherman  
صياد



farmer  
فلاح



sheep  
خروف



cow  
بقرة



goat  
معزة

الوصف

الوصف

● نستخدم (and) بمعنى (و) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين لهما نفس الفكرة أي انها تضيف للمعنى،

-I like fruit and vegetables.

● ونستخدم (but) بمعنى (لكن) للربط بين جملتين أو اسمين أو صفتين بينهما تناقض أو بين جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية،

-I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.







## الاستماع وتعلم نطق الكلمات

- نقدم في هذه الفقرة إرشادات تقرب بقدر الإمكان نطق الكلمات بشكل صحيح والتركيز على الأخطاء الشائعة في النطق ويُفضّل سماع الكلمات من خاصية (QR code) الموجودة بالكتاب .

١ لنطق كلمة (rice) انطق الحرف (r) مثل حرف (s) لأنه جاء بعده حرف (e) .

٢ لنطق كلمة (onion) بشكل صحيح انطق الحرف (o) الأول مثل نطق حرف (u) في كلمة (bus) وانطق حرف (i) مثل نطق حرف (y) في كلمة (yes) وحرف (o) الثاني مثل نطق حرف (o) في كلمة (second) .

٣ لنطق كلمة (special) انطق الحروف (cio) مثل حرف (ش) باللغة العربية .

٤ لنطق كلمة (delicious) انطق الحروف (ch) مثل حرف (ش) باللغة العربية .

٥ لنطق كلمة (Egyptian) انطق الحروف (tian) مثل حرف (نس) باللغة العربية .





Write a paragraph of  
EIGHTEEN (18) words.

## Answers to Paragraphs

### Lesson 1

#### Egyptian farmers

- 1 Egyptian farmers are very important. They grow many crops. They keep a lot of animals. They can raise chickens on their farms.

### Lesson 2

#### Being healthy

- 2 We should eat fruit and vegetables to be healthy. We should drink a lot of water. We should do a lot of sport. We shouldn't drink cola.

### Lesson 4

#### Damietta governorate

- 3 I live in Damietta with my family. Farmers grow rice, tomatoes and potatoes. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati cheese is famous. Life is good in Damietta.

### Activity - Unit 1

#### Your favorite meal

- 4 My favorite meal is lunch. My mother cooks chicken and rice. I eat fruit like watermelons, bananas and grapes, too. They are healthy food.



# Al-Azhar Exercises

الاسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

## A- Listening

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نحن الاجتماع اظهر الازهر الشريف

1. Dad is a ..... (teacher - doctor - scientist)
2. The desert is very ..... (warm - hot - cold)
3. Dad likes ..... animals. looking at .....

## B- Language Functions

### 2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل:

vegetables - do - healthy - like

- A : Do you like ..... food?
- B : Yes, I .....
- A : What healthy food do you ..... ?
- B : Fruit and .....

## C- Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read and answer the questions:

أقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My father is a good farmer. He has a big farm. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, bananas, watermelons and wheat. He keeps a cow, a horse and a donkey. He raises chickens to get eggs.

#### A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's your father's job?
2. What does your father keep?





## I feel good

### B. Choose the correct answer:

3. My father is a ..... (farmer - doctor - fisherman)
4. My father's farm is ..... (big - small - old)
5. My father raises ..... (chickens - birds - ducks)

### D- Vocabulary and Structures

#### 4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. He plays football ..... tennis.  
☐ a but                      ☐ b so                      ☐ c and
2. Farmers ..... chickens to get eggs and meat.  
☐ a eat                      ☐ b raise                      ☐ c grow
3. Nabil washes the rice, ..... he can't cook it.  
☐ a for                      ☐ b but                      ☐ c so
4. We need ..... to grow plants.  
☐ a apples                      ☐ b sugar                      ☐ c seeds
5. Domiat cheese is very .....  
☐ a tall                      ☐ b wrong                      ☐ c famous

### E- Writing

#### 5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. her - Hoda - repainted - bike.  
 .....
2. dead - The - were - seeds.  
 .....
3. grow - in - We - rice - Egypt.  
 .....
4. many - You - Egypt - can - in - crops - see.  
 .....
5. was - and - Cheng - good - honest.  
 .....



# Activities

Level 1

1



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الان نستمع الى صوت كتاب



1. I read a folktale from .....

- ☐ a China      ☐ b India      ☐ c Italy      ☐ d Japan

2. The emperor gave ..... to Cheng.

- ☐ a carrots      ☐ b trees      ☐ c plants      ☐ d seeds

3. Cheng was an honest .....

- ☐ a teacher      ☐ b gardener      ☐ c farmer      ☐ d traveler

4. Cheng was the ..... emperor.

- ☐ a first      ☐ b next      ☐ c third      ☐ d fourth

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers ..... rice in Egypt.

- ☐ a grow      ☐ b play      ☐ c visit      ☐ d draw

2. We try to ..... in the competition.

- ☐ a lose      ☐ b lie      ☐ c win      ☐ d grow

3. An emperor is someone who is like a .....

- ☐ a teacher      ☐ b king      ☐ c farmer      ☐ d nurse

4. He doesn't ..... He is honest.

- ☐ a die      ☐ b lie      ☐ c buy      ☐ d fly

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

famous - catch - Life - grow - sell

Alexandria is a beautiful city. ❶ ..... is good there. The sea in Alexandria is ❷ ..... Fishermen come to the sea to ❸ ..... thousands of fish. Then, they ❹ ..... the fish at the market.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.







I feel good

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ahmed Samy. I like chicken and mangoes. I like drinking sugarcane juice. My brother Magdy likes rice and potatoes. **We** go to school by bus. We do our homework at seven o'clock. Then, we play with my cousin Adham at eight o'clock. We have dinner at 9 o'clock in the evening.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**We**" refers to

☐ a Ahmed and Samy

☐ b Ahmed and Magdy

☐ c Ahmed and Adel

☐ d Ahmed and Adham

2. They have dinner at ..... o'clock.

☐ a eight

☐ b nine

☐ c seven

☐ d ten

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How do Ahmed and Magdy go to school?

4. Who likes chicken and mangoes?

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She likes fruit (or) chocolate.

2. There ..... (are) some rice.

3. I have candy ..... (but) cola.

4. I like playing tennis, ..... (and) I can't play well.

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

we raise chickens in Egypt - - - - -

#### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إثنائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Your favorite meal

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

1- What's your favorite meal?

2- Who cooks it?



## I discover myself

## Desert Animals

حيوانات صحراوية



## Objectives of the Unit

## أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about desert animals.

« يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الحيوانات الصحراوية.

- 2 Practice making comparisons.

- يتدرب الطالب على عمل مقارنات.

3. Listen to a short story.

- يستمع الطالب إلى قصة قصيرة.

4. Learn about the difference between the /p/ and /b/ sounds.

« يتعلم الطالب عن الفرق بين صوتي /b/ and /p/.

5. Describe two animals.

- يصف الطالب اثنين من الحيوانات.

6. Write a fact file.

- يكتب الطالب ملف حقائق.

- 7 Research and make a poster.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وبوستر.

# Lesson 4

## Animals in Egypt



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



fennec fox ثعلب الصحراء



camel جمل



spider عنكبوت



نسر طائر العقاب



pelican\* بجعة



snake ثعبان



crocodile تمساح



lizard سحلية



insect حشرة

### Other words



What about.....?

ماذا عن.....؟

yes / yeah

نعم

few

قليل

do a very important job يقوم بعمل هام جدا

true

صحيح / حقيقي

OK

حسنًا

Help your child learn about desert animals.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الحيوانات الصحراوية.

## Adjectives صفات

huge	ضخم	cute	جميل
ugly	قبيح	dangerous	خطير
scary	مخيف ، مرعب	helpful	مفيد
scarier	مخيف أكثر	important	هام

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

live يعيش  
control يتحكم / يقيد عدد

lived  
controlled

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

think يعتقد  
do يفعل

thought  
did

### Study the following

- 1 The crocodile is huge. - التمساح ضخم.
- 2 I think crocodiles are scary. - أعتقد أن التماسيح مخيفة.
- 3 I think the spider is scarier. - أعتقد أن العنكبوت مخيف أكثر.
- 4 The spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders. - العنكبوت مفيدة جدًا. إنها تأكل الحشرات ويحبها الفلاحون.
- 5 What about the snake and the crocodile? - ماذا عن الثعبان والتمساح؟
- 6 Animals are all important. - الحيوانات كلها مهمة.
- 7 Animals do a very important job. - الحيوانات تقوم بوظيفة هامة جدًا.
- 8 Which animals are dangerous? - أي من الحيوانات خطيرة؟

Match the words the pictures:

صل الكلمات بالصور:

birds

lizards

insects





## Desert Animals

### 2 Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ،



**Mom** : Look at all these animals that live in our country.

استمع إلى النص:

**Sara** : Look at the crocodile, it's **huge**!

**Tarek** : Huge and **scary**!

**Sara** : I think the spider is scarier.

**Mom** : Yeah, but spiders are very **important**. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders.

**Sara** : OK, what about the snake and the crocodile? They're **dangerous**, aren't they?

**Mom** : Yes, that's true, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This **increases** the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.



### 1 Look and say. Then write.

انظر وقل ثم اكتب،

fennec fox - crocodile - snake - spider - camel

1



2



3



4



5



### 4

استمع للنص السابق مرة أخرى وأجب،

Which animals do Mom, Tarek and Sara not talk about? .....



هل تعلم؟

The Sahara Desert covers large parts of ten countries in Africa. It is very big, but Antarctica is bigger!

تغطي الصحراء الكبرى أجزاء كبيرة من ١٠ دول في أفريقيا. إنها كبيرة جدًا ولكن القارة القطبية الجنوبية أكبر.





# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة



1. Crocodiles are ..... animals.

☐ a small

☐ b scary

☐ c short

☐ d thin

2. Crocodiles live in the .....

☐ a palace

☐ b park

☐ c desert

☐ d river

3. Crocodiles eat .....

☐ a grass and plants

☐ b meat and fish

☐ c fruit and vegetables

☐ d seeds and beans

4. Crocodiles ..... the number of small animals.

☐ a stop

☐ b think

☐ c control

☐ d make

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Spiders are ..... because they eat insects.

☐ a careful

☐ b helpful

☐ c careless

☐ d huge

2. Animals are all ..... because they help us.

☐ a scary

☐ b huge

☐ c important

☐ d ill

3. .... animals are cute?

☐ a Where

☐ b Which

☐ c Does

☐ d When

4. Crocodiles are ....., but they are important.

☐ a cute

☐ b dangerous

☐ c nice

☐ d small

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

lizards - do - scary - fisherman - number

(2023)

There are a lot of animals in our country. Some animals are ❶ ....., but they are important. Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they ❷ ..... a very important job. They eat insects and ❸ ..... This controls the ❹ ..... of these small animals.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

We don't like spiders or crocodiles. They are scary animals, but they are important in our life. Crocodiles are dangerous and huge, but they do great jobs. They eat insects and small animals like lizards. This controls the numbers of the small animals.

## A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ are dangerous.

a birds

b crocodiles

c camels

d pelicans

2. The underlined word "huge" means very \_\_\_\_\_.

a small

b tall

c big

d short

## B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4. Which animals can crocodiles eat?

.....

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i think spiders are very helpful

(2023) -

## 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقبرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Answer the following questions

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

helpful - dangerous

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

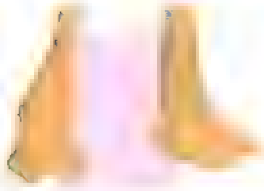
# Lesson 9

## Amazing desert animals



### Key vocabulary

الاستماع إلى المفردات:



flat feet أقدام مسطحة



camel جمل



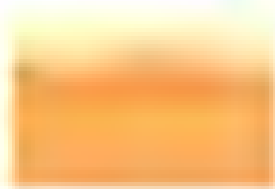
fox فرو



mouse فار



horse حصان



sand رمل



elephant فيل

### Adjectives



#### Long Adjectives صفات طويلة (less / more)

amazing	مدهش
delicious	لذيذ
beautiful	جميل
careful	حريص
perfect	رائع / ممتاز - مناسب جدا
dangerous	خطير

#### Short Adjectives صفات قصيرة (+ er or est)

noisy	مزعج
strong	قوي
angry	غاضب
old	كبير السن
small	صغير
thin	رفيع
nice	جميل
long	طويل
large	كبير
fast	سريع

### Other words

### كلمات أخرى



special way

طريقة خاصة

clothes

ملابس

fresh water

ماء عذب

kph

كيلو متر / ساعة

### Conjugation of verbs

### التركيبات الفعلية

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

cross

يعبر

crossed

have / has

يملك

had

carry

يحمل

carried

make

يعمل

made

### Study the following

- Camels are beautiful, strong animals. الجمال حيوانات جميلة وقوية.
- They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. إنها تساعدنا في حمل الأشياء والناس عند عبور الصحراء.
- Their milk is delicious. لبنها لذيذ.
- We can use their fur to make clothes. يمكن استخدام فروها لعمل ملابس.
- Camels are perfect for the desert. الجمال ملائمة جدًا للعيش في الصحراء.
- Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand. الجمال لديها اقدام كبيرة ومسطحة تمكنها من السير على الرمال.
- Camels can live without water for a long time. يمكن أن تعيش الجمال بدون ماء لفترة طويلة.
- Camels are very noisy and they can get angry. الجمال مزعجة جدًا ويمكن أن تغضب.
- Horses have large beautiful eyes. الخيول لديها عيون كبيرة وجميلة.
- Horses eat grass and drink fresh water. الخيول تأكل الحشائش وتشرب الماء العذب.
- Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them. يمكن أن تعيش الخيول في الصحراء ولكن تحتاج أن يعتنى بها الناس.





## Comparative adjectives مقارنة الصفات

◀ نستخدم الصفات لوصف الأسماء. - The mouse is small.

### مقارنة شيئين

◀ يمكن أيضاً أن نستخدم الصفات للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين كالاتي:

◀ أولاً: يجب أن تعلم أن الصفات تنقسم إلى صفات طويلة وصفات قصيرة.

الصفات  
القصيرة

◀ مع الصفات القصيرة نضيف (er) آخر الصفة عند المقارنة:

اسم + er + than + صفة قصيرة + اسم

- A mouse is **smaller than** an elephant.

⚠ لاحظ

◀ يمكن حذف (than) وحذف آخر اسم إذا تم ذكر الاسم في جملة سابقة كالاتي:

- A rabbit is small. I think the mouse is **smaller**. (than the rabbit)

⚠ لاحظ

- عند إضافة (er) للصفة:

◀ إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ي + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ier):

scary → scarier heavy → heavier

◀ إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن نضاعف الحرف الساكن:

big → bigger thin → thinner

◀ إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (r) فقط:

nice → nicer

◀ نضيف قبل الصفة الطويلة less / more

2

الصفات  
الطويلة

beautiful → less / more beautiful

less + صفة طويلة + than

◀ أقل من

more + صفة طويلة + than

◀ أكثر من

اسم + than + صفة طويلة + more / less + اسم

- Eagles are **more beautiful than** insects.

- Crocodiles are **more dangerous than** fish.

- Camels are **more perfect for the desert than** horses.

⚠ لاحظ

◀ لا تستخدم less / more مع الصفات القصيرة ولا تستخدم (er) مع الصفات الطويلة.





1

Read about camels and horses and learn about their special features.

اقرأ عن الجمال وتأكد من إجابتيك. ما الشيء المدهش عن الجمال؟

Camels are **perfect**! They're **big**, **strong** animals.

They help us to carry things and people **across** the desert. استمع إلى النص:

Their milk is **delicious**. We can use their fur to make clothes!

Camels are **perfect** for the desert. Here's why:



1



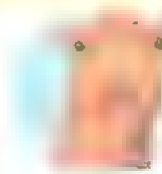
Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.

2



Camels can live without water for a long time.

3



Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

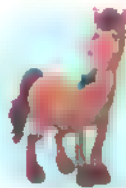
- But be careful! Camels are very **strong**, and they can get angry.

2

and camels.

انظر إلى ملف الحقائق واقرا الفرق بين الخيول والجمال.

Horse



Camel



How tall is it?

1.4 - 1.8 m

1.8 - 2.0 m

How heavy is it?

380 - 550 kg

400 - 650 kg

How fast is it?

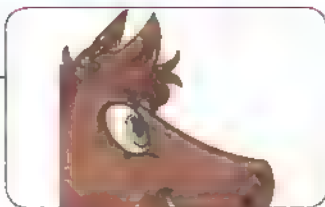
88 kph

65 kph

How long does it live?

25 - 30 years

40 years



Horses have large, beautiful eyes.



Horses eat grass and drink fresh water. Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.

استمع إلى النص:





## 3 Read and answer (True) or (False):

اقرأ وأجب بـ (صح) أو (خطأ):

True False

① Horses are slower than camels.

② Camels are taller than horses.

③ Horses are heavier than camels.

④ Camels live longer than horses.

## 4 Look and complete the table:

انظر واكمل الجدول:

tall	taller
_____	heavier
fast	_____
_____	bigger
beautiful	more _____
delicious	_____ delicious
_____	shorter

## 5 Write sentences to compare these animals:

اكتب جمل للمقارنة بين الحيوانات:

1. (snake / fox / dangerous)

A snake is more dangerous than a fox.

2. (elephant / hippo / big)

3. (horse / giraffe / tall)

4. (crocodile / fish / dangerous)

5. (camel / fennec fox / small)

6. (ice cream / butter / delicious)



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نصائح للاستماع: اقرأ النص أولاً



1. Camels are .....

☐ a weak

☐ b strong

☐ c small

☐ d young

2. Camels can carry people and things to cross the .....

☐ a river

☐ b lake

☐ c sea

☐ d desert

3. Camels' ..... is very delicious.

☐ a fur

☐ b milk

☐ c water

☐ d skin

4. We can use their fur to make .....

☐ a clothes

☐ b food

☐ c salad

☐ d koshari

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A: How ..... does it live? B: 40 years.

☐ a tall

☐ b many

☐ c long

☐ d often

2. Camels are ..... for the desert.

☐ a difficult

☐ b easy

☐ c perfect

☐ d kind

3. Camels have large ..... feet.

(2024)

☐ a flat

☐ b tall

☐ c short

☐ d noisy

4. Horses eat ..... and drink fresh water.

☐ a meat

☐ b fish

☐ c chicken

☐ d grass

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

(2024)

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**carry - special - feet - fur - feathers**

Camels are amazing animals. They have flat ❶ , so they can walk on the sand. Camels can live without water for a long time. They have ❷ ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in. We can use their ❸ to make clothes. Camels can help us to ❹ things and people.

**4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Camels are ..... (tall) than horses.
2. The lion is stronger ..... (then) the mouse.
3. Camels are ..... (perfect) for the desert than horses.
4. Ice cream is ..... (delicious) than butter.
5. A snake is..... (dangerous) than a fox.
6. Camels are amazing, ..... (so) they can get angry.
7. Horses are ..... (fastest) than camels.
8. The horse is shorter ..... (that) the camel.
9. Crocodiles are ..... (many) dangerous than the giraffes.

**5 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

camels are perfect for the desert



# Lesson 3

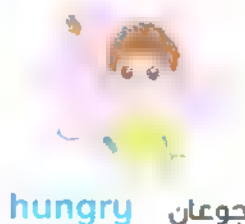
## The pelican and the bear Pronunciation and Math

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



pelican بجعة



hungry جوعان



paw\* كف الحيوان



bear\* دب



مخلب الحيوان \*aw



beak منقار



juicy fish سمكة عصرية (طرية)



غضبان

### Other words

### الكلمات الأخرى

Excuse me!

اعذرني!

interesting

شيق

fun

متعة

boring

ممل

surprised

مندهش

both

كلاهم

scared

خائف

sadly

بحزن

Help your child learn new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.





# Conjugation of verbs

المضارع

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
look at ينظر إلى	looked at	have / has يمتلك	had
reach يصل إلى	reached	feel يشعر	felt
open يفتح	opened	think يعتقد	thought
lift يرفع	lifted	take يأخذ	took
		say يقول	said

## Study the following

- The bear reaches for the fish. يصل الدب إلى السمكة.
- It is ready to take the fish out of the water. إنه جاهز لياخذ السمكة من الماء.
- The bear is surprised and angry. - الدب مندهش وغضبان.
- The pelican looks scared. - البجعة تبدو خائفة.
- The bear is stronger than the pelican. الدب أقوى من البجعة.
- How do you feel, pelican? - كيف تشعرى أيتها البجعة؟
- But you are hungrier than me. لكن أنت جائعة أكثر منى.
- You are kinder than all the other bears. أنت عطوف أكثر من كل الدببة الأخرى.
- Which animal is hungrier? أى حيوان أكثر جوعاً؟

## 1 Look at the pictures and say:

انظر إلى الصور وقل:

Describe the bear.

صف الدب

Describe the pelican.

صف البجعة



## The Pelican and the Bear

استمع إلى النص:



A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, juicy fish.

The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its **paw**.

The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear sees the pelican. The pelican sees the bear.

"Excuse me," the pelican says, "that's my fish."

The bear is surprised and angry. "Pelican, look at my **claws**. Now look at my teeth. That's my fish."

The pelican looks scared. "I'm sorry, Bear," it says sadly.

The bear is stronger than the pelican. The bear looks at the pelican.

"How do you feel, pelican?" he asks. "I feel hungry," says Pelican.

"I'm bigger and stronger than you," says Bear. "But I think you are hungrier than me. You can have the fish. "Thank you, Bear!" says Pelican. "You are kinder than all the other bears!"



### 3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer:

اصنع مع زميلك واسأل واجب:

1. Which animal reaches for the fish first? ١- ما الحيوان الذي وصل للسمكة أولاً؟
2. Which animal is angry? ٢- ما الحيوان الغاضب؟
3. Which animal is hungrier? ٣- أي حيوان جائع أكثر؟
4. How do you think the bear feels at the end of the story? ٤- كيف تعتقد ما شعر به الدب في آخر القصة؟

Help your child read the story and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ القصة ويحب عن الاسئلة.

# Pronunciation

★ Listen and say:

استمع وقل



ندرس في هذا الدرس نطق حرفي (b) و (p) والفرق بينهما حيث في حرف (b) نضغط على الشفتين بقوة ويندفع الهواء من الفم عند نطق الحرف ولكن في حرف (p) لا نضغط على الشفتين مع عدم اندفاع هواء من الفم حيث يشبه حرف (p) في اللغة العربية:

استمع إلى المفردات:



bee

نحلة



bird

طائر

/b/  
words



pelican

بجعة



pear

كُمثري

/p/  
words



bear

دب



beak

منقار



peas\*

بصلة



pin

دبوس

Help your child know the difference between the /b/ and /p/ sounds.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف الفرق بين الصوتين /b/ و /p/.

# MATH

## Fractions

الكسر يتكون من جزئين الجزء العلوي يسمى البسط والجزء السفلي يسمى المقام ويوضع بينهما شرطة الكسر:

numerator

البسط

$$\frac{1}{2}$$

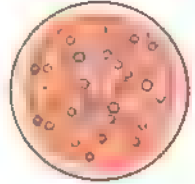
denominator

المقام

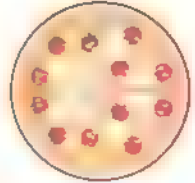
- يمكن أن نستخدم الكسور للتعبير عن عدد صحيح وغير صحيح فمثلاً  $\frac{4}{2}$  هو كسر يمثل الرقم (2) وهو عدد صحيح و  $\frac{1}{2}$  يمثل (0.5) وهو عدد غير صحيح.

ولاحظ التالي:

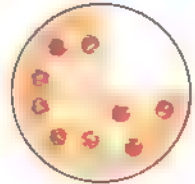
$$\frac{1}{1} = \frac{1}{1}$$



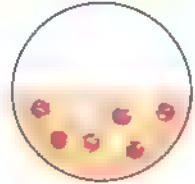
$$1 = \frac{4}{4}$$



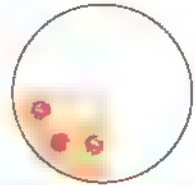
$$\frac{3}{4} = \frac{4-1}{4}$$



$$\frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{4-2}{4}$$



$$\frac{1}{4} = \frac{4-3}{4}$$

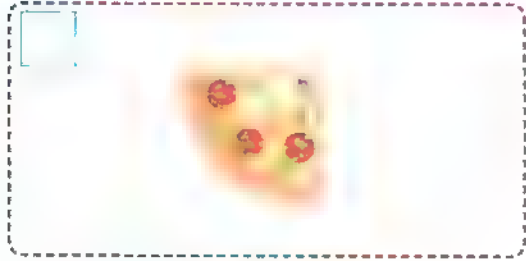




4

انظر ورقب تنازلي (من الكبير للصغير)

انظر ورقب تنازلي (من الكبير للصغير)



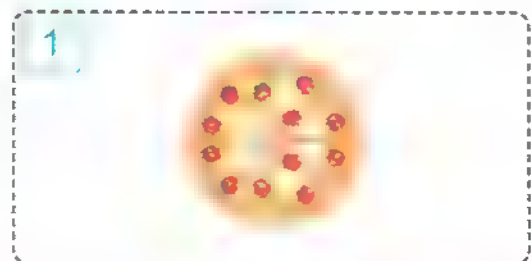
$$\frac{1}{4}$$



$$\frac{3}{4}$$



$$\frac{1}{2}$$



$$\frac{1}{1}$$



### Did you know?

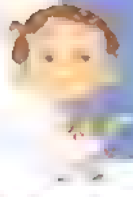
We use fractions in everyday life. For example, here's a simple milkshake recipe:  $\frac{1}{2}$  a glass of milk,  $\frac{1}{4}$  cup of banana,  $\frac{1}{4}$  cup of vanilla ice cream.

هل تعلم

نستخدم الكسور في حياتنا اليومية. فعلى سبيل المثال هذه وصفة بسيطة لعمل مخفوق اللبن «ميك شيك»:  $\frac{1}{2}$  كوب لبن،  $\frac{1}{4}$  كوب موز،  $\frac{1}{4}$  كوب آيس كريم بالفانيليا.







# Activities

 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A pear is a kind of .....  
☐ a animals      ☐ b birds      ☐ c fruit      ☐ d lizards
2. The ..... is a bird.  
☐ a pelican      ☐ b bear      ☐ c fox      ☐ d camel
3. The pelican opens its big ..... to eat the fish.  
☐ a claw      ☐ b beak      ☐ c paw      ☐ d feather
4. The bear uses its ..... to catch the fish.  
☐ a beak      ☐ b paw      ☐ c feather      ☐ d stomach
5. Milkshake is a kind of.....  
☐ a soup      ☐ b juice      ☐ c rice      ☐ d pizza

 **Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**gave - wanted - hungry - saw - felt**

One day, a pelican saw a big fish in the river. He ❶ ..... to eat it. But the pelican ❷ ..... a bear. The bear was ❸ ..... and wanted to eat the fish, too. The bear was kind. He ❹ ..... the fish to the pelican.

 **Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I like birds a lot. I can see them every day. They have wings to fly. They have beaks to eat food. Birds have legs and tails. Some birds are big and others are small. My favorite bird is the pelican. It looks beautiful. It has a long beak. It eats small fish. It lives near the rivers. We can see pelicans in the zoo.



Help your child deal with such questions.      يساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The pelican eats small \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a lizards

☐ b insects

☐ c fish

☐ d birds

2. The pelican has a long \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a ear

☐ b nose

☐ c tail

☐ d beak

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Where does the pelican live?

4. How can birds fly?

**4 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

is the pelican really scared

**5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

\_\_\_\_\_

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

hungry - fish



# Lessons 4 & 5 Animal fact file

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



rhim gazelle\*  
غزال الريم



الصحراء الكبرى



grass  
عشب حشائش



leaves  
أوراق الشجر



plants  
نباتات



yellow-white coat  
صوف أصفر وأبيض



fennec fox  
ثعلب الصحراء



dolphin  
دولفين



horns  
قرون



mice  
فئران

## Other words



North Africa

شمال إفريقيا

foxes

ثعالب

centimeters

سنتيمترات

around

حول

kilogram

كيلو جرام

really

بالفعل

during

أثناء

thick fur

فرو سميك

heat

حرارة

warm

دافئ



## Question words

Where.....?

أين... ؟

What colors... ?

مالون... ؟

How heavy.....?

كم وزن.....؟

How tall.....?

كم طول (رأسي) ... ؟

Why.....?

لماذا.....؟

How long.....?

كم طول (أفقي) ... ؟

What..... ?

ما / ماذا.....؟

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

look (beautiful) يبدو (جميل)

looked (beautiful)

protect يحمي

protected

need يحتاج

needed

walk يمشي

walked

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

keep يحافظ علي

kept

lose يفقد

lost

hear يسمع

heard

## Study the following

1 Rhim gazelles look very beautiful.

تبدو غزلان الريم جميل جدا.

2 They have big ears and long horns.

- لديهم آذان كبيرة وقرون طويلة.

3 They have yellow, white coats which protect them from the sun.

لديهم صوف أبيض وأصفر ليحميهم من الشمس.

4 The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa.

- يعيش ثعلب الصحراء في صحراء شمال أفريقيا.

5 It's smaller than other foxes.

انه أصغر من الثعالب الأخرى.

6 The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals.

- يحتاج ثعلب الصحراء آذن كبيرة لسمع الحشرات والحيوانات الصغيرة.

7 The fennec fox loses heat from its ears.

- يفقد ثعلب الصحراء الحرارة من أذنيه.

8 The fennec fox's fur keeps it warm.

يحافظ فرو ثعلب الصحراء على دفئه.

التي من خلالها نعرف على هذه الحيوانات.

### 1 Where does it live?

أين يعيش؟

In + المكان.

للإجابة:

Where does the fennec fox live?

In the deserts of North Africa.

### 2 How tall is it?

.....centimeters.



كم يبلغ طوله «رأسى»؟

### 3 What does it eat?

ماذا يأكل؟

Insects, small lizards and mice.

### 4 Why does the fennec fox have big ears?

لماذا لدى ثعلب الصحراء أذن كبيرة؟

So it can hear small animals and insects.

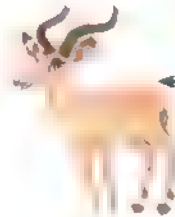
### 5 How heavy is a rhin gazelle?

كم وزنه....؟

About / Around..... kilogram(s).

### 6 How long is it?

..... meters / centimeters.



كم طوله «أفقى».....؟

### 7 How long does it live?

كم المدة التي يعيشها؟

Around / About ..... years.

### Animal fact file:

استمع إلى النص:



#### Rhin gazelle

Rhin gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long **horns**. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.





How long is a rhim gazelle's horn?	20 - 30 cm
How heavy is a rhim gazelle?	20 - 30 kg
How long does it live?	about 14 years
What color is its coat?	yellow-white

1 Read the text quickly and answer T (True) or F (False).

اقرأ النص سريعاً وأجب صح أو خطأ.

True False

- ① Rhim gazelles live near the sea.
- ② Rhim gazelles eat plants and leaves.
- ③ Rhim gazelles have short horns.
- ④ Rhim gazelles have dark-colored coats.
- ⑤ Rhim gazelles live for about 14 years.

2 Do some research and write what you learned.

قم بعمل بحث واكتب ما تعلمته.

K	W	L
What I Know ما أعرفه	What I Am to Know ما أريد أن أعرفه	What I Learned ما تعلمته
Dolphins are not dangerous. They are not fish.		

A poster about an Egyptian desert animal.

## بوستر عن حيوان صحراوي مصري



Work in groups. Think about the task.

اعمل في مجموعات. فكر وابحث.

- Find an Egyptian desert animal.

فكر في حيوان صحراوي مصري.

➤ Where does it live?

أين يعيش؟

➤ What does it eat?

ماذا يأكل؟

➤ Why is it special?

لماذا هو مميز؟



Draw or find some pictures you can use.

اقرأ وافعل.

1. Draw or find some pictures you can use.

2. Make your poster.

### The fennec fox:

استمع إلى النص:



The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It is smaller than other foxes. It is 20 centimeters high. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It is 30 - 40 centimeters long. Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice.

During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it's cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.



# Activities



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The fennec fox ..... heat from its ears.

- ☐ a looks      ☐ b loses      ☐ c walks      ☐ d keeps

2. A: How ..... is the rhim gazelle? B: About 20 - 30 kg.

- ☐ a long      ☐ b tall      ☐ c heavy      ☐ d high

3. The fennec fox's thick ..... keeps it warm.

- ☐ a mouth      ☐ b fur      ☐ c beak      ☐ d wing

4. Rhim gazelles have coats which ..... them from the sun.

- ☐ a see      ☐ b run      ☐ c protect      ☐ d drink

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2024)

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

heat - hooves - insects - foxes - ears

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other <sup>1</sup> ..... . Its <sup>2</sup> ..... are big, really big. The fennec fox needs the big ears to hear <sup>3</sup> ..... and small animals. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fox loses <sup>4</sup> ..... from its ears.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many beautiful animals in the desert. Rhim gazelle is one of them. They look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat.

Rhim gazelles have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.



## A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about .....

- ☐ a rhim gazelles      ☐ b fennec fox  
☐ c plants      ☐ d the Sahara Desert

2. The word "....." means to keep them safe.

- ☐ a look      ☐ b protect      ☐ c live      ☐ d leave

## B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

.....

4. Why are the yellow-white coats useful to rhim gazelles?

.....

## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how long does a rhim gazelle live

## 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Rhim gazelles

beautiful - horns

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Review



## Animals, birds and insects حيوانات وطيور وحشرات



fennec fox ثعلب الصحراء



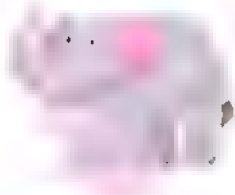
lizard سحلية



spider عنكبوت



eagle طائر العقاب



elephant

فيل



dolphin

دولفين



crocodile

تمساح



pelican

بجعة



camel

جمل



rhinoceros



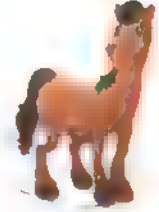
snake

ثعبان



mouse

فأر



horse

حصان

## Animals body parts أجزاء جسم الحيوان



beak

منقار



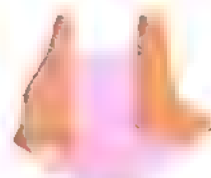
fur

فرو



horns

قرون



flat feet

أقدام مسطحة



eye

عين

Help your child revise Unit 2.

ساعد طفلك ان يراجع الوحدة الثانية.



## A short story قصة قصيرة



bear  
دب



juicy fish  
سمكة عصيرية



claw  
مخالب



paw  
كف حيوان

## Comparative adjectives مقارنة الصفات

◀ نستخدم الصفات لوصف الأشياء.

- The crocodile is scary.

◀ يمكن أيضًا أن نستخدم الصفات للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين كالاتي:

## 1 الصفات القصيرة

◀ نضيف (er) آخر الصفة:

اسم + er + than + اسم + صفة قصيرة + اسم

- The spider is **scarier than** the crocodile.



أولاً:  
الصفات  
القصيرة

## 2 الصفات الطويلة

◀ لا نضيف (er) للصفات الطويلة عند المقارنة.

◀ نضيف قبل الصفة الطويلة less / more.

beautiful → less / more beautiful

اسم + more / less + صفة طويلة + than + اسم

- Eagles are **more beautiful than** insects.



ثانياً:  
الصفات  
الطويلة





1. لنطق كلمة (pelican) بشكل صحيح انطق الحرف (a) مثل نطق حرف (o) في كلمة (second) .

2. لنطق كلمة (fun) انطق حرفي (un) مثل نطق حرفي (in) في كلمة (girl) .

3. انطق كلمة (bean) وكلمة (pean) مثل نطق كلمة (care) مع اختلاف أول حرف .

4. انطق كلمة (claw) وكلمة (paw) مثل نطق كلمة (draw) مع اختلاف أول حرفين

5. انطق كلمة (pea) مثل نطق كلمة (bee) مع اختلاف أول حرف .

6. في كلمة (rhin gazelle) انطق الجزء (rhin) مثل كلمة (him) مع عدم نطق حرف (h) لانه (silent) أي

انها تنطق (rim) وانطق (gazelle) بحيث ينطق (a) مثل نطق حرف (o) في كلمة (second) ولا تنطق حرف

(e) الاخير حيث ينطق آخر مقطع (zelle) مثل (zel) .





## Answers to Paragraphs

### Animals in our country

- 1 There are many animals in our country. For example, spiders are helpful, they eat insects. Snakes are dangerous, but they eat insects and lizards. These animals are important.

### Lesson 2

### The pelican and the bear

- 2 There were a bear and a pelican. They both wanted to eat a fish in the river. But the bear was kinder and gave the fish to the pelican.

### Rhim gazelles

- 3 Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They eat grass and plants. They have long horns. They don't need to drink a lot of water. They can run very fast.

### Activity - Unit 2

### The fennec fox

- 4 The fennec fox lives in the desert. It has big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects and lizards. Its thick fur keeps it warm at night.



# Al-Azhar Exercises

الأسئلة الخاصة بالارهر الشريف

## A- Listening

 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

1. Horses are very ..... (slow - fast - weak)
2. Horses can live up to ..... years. (thirty - forty - fifty)
3. Horses eat ..... (fruit - grass - corn)

## B- Language Functions

 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكْمَل:

live - takes - picture - petican

- A Look at this ..... What is this?
- B This is a .....
- A Where does it ..... ?
- B It lives in .....

## C- Reading Comprehension

 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

I live in a small town. My school is next to a big park. My father is a teacher. He is very kind. He teaches English. Students like him very much.

**A: Answer the following questions:**

1. Where is your school? .....
2. What does your father teach? .....

**B: Choose the correct answer:**

3. I live in a ..... town. (big - small - tall)
4. My father is a ..... (vet - doctor - teacher)
5. My father is very ..... (unkind - kind - bad)





## D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A snake is more ..... than a fox.  
☐ a cute                      ☐ b slow                      ☐ c dangerous
2. A mouse is ..... than an elephant.  
☐ a smaller                      ☐ b very small                      ☐ c smallest
3. Spiders eat .....  
☐ a ice cream                      ☐ b soup                      ☐ c insects
4. A: ..... does the fennec fox live? B: In the desert.  
☐ a When                      ☐ b Where                      ☐ c Why
5. Camels have large ..... feet.  
☐ a fur                      ☐ b flat                      ☐ c noisy

## E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. eat - What - it - does?

.....

2. hungry - are - They - very.

.....

3. eats - small - The pelican - fish.

.....

4. to - need - look after - Horses - people - them.

.....

5. do - a very - Animals - job - important.

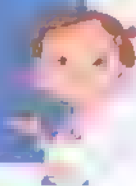
.....





# Activities

Unit 2



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

استمع إلى الصوت



- My uncle has horses in his .....  
☐ a house      ☐ b garden      ☐ c school      ☐ d field
- Horses have large .....  
☐ a ears      ☐ b wings      ☐ c eyes      ☐ d tails
- Horses can live for ..... years.  
☐ a sixty      ☐ b forty      ☐ c thirty      ☐ d fifty
- Horses need ..... to look after them.  
☐ a children      ☐ b people      ☐ c animals      ☐ d birds

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The fennec fox has ..... ears.  
☐ a big      ☐ b small      ☐ c little      ☐ d tiny
- Crocodiles are ..... This means they are very big.  
☐ a small      ☐ b little      ☐ c huge      ☐ d funny
- Camels can live ..... water for a long time.  
☐ a with      ☐ b without      ☐ c in      ☐ d for
- I want to eat a .....  
☐ a bear      ☐ b pear      ☐ c pin      ☐ d beak

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fresh - fast - eyes - shorter - bad

Horses are amazing animals. They are very ① ..... They have beautiful big ② ..... They eat grass and they like to drink ③ ..... water. They are ④ ..... than camels.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hani. My uncle lives in Fayoum. He has a big farm. He has a lot of animals. I can see cows, hens, goats and horses on the farm. I like horses very much. They aren't dangerous. They are strong animals. I like to feed them. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can carry heavy things. They are useful.





## Desert Animals

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "**them**" refers to  
 a goats                      b cows                      c horses                      d hens
- Horses are .....  
 a dangerous                      b useful                      c ugly                      d scary

### B. Answer the following questions:

- Where does Hani's uncle live? .....
- What does Hani's uncle have on the farm? .....

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- You are ..... (**more kind**) than any other bears.
- Snakes are ..... (**many**) dangerous than lizards.
- Are eagles ..... (**beautiful**) than insects?
- Camels are taller ..... (**then**) horses.

### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

where does a camel live

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

ears - fur

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

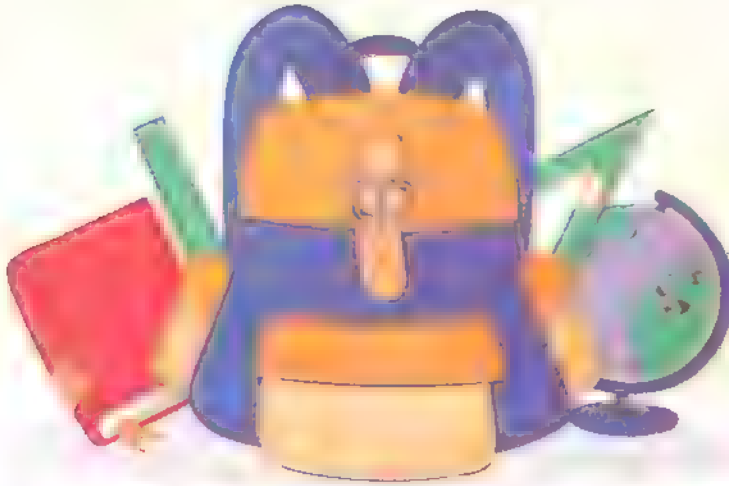
(2028)



# I discover myself

## Why do we grow plants?

لماذا نزرع النباتات؟



### Objectives of the Unit

### أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about plants and how they help us.  
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن النباتات وكيف تساعدنا.
2. Practice making sentences with the superlative.  
- يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل باستخدام صيغة التفضيل العليا.
3. Read, listen to, and understand a short story.  
- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة ويفهمها.
4. Learn about and say words with the consonant blends /sl/ and /sw/.  
- يتعلم الطالب ويقول كلمات بها الاصوات الساكنة /sl/ و /sw/.
5. Write the life cycle of a sunflower.  
- يكتب الطالب عن دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.
6. Research and write a short report.  
- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ويكتب تقرير قصير.

# Lesson

## Plants and seeds

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



تربة



leaf

ورقة شجر



seed

بذرة



flower

وردة / زهرة



shoot\*

فسيلة / نبتة

The germination process

عملية  
الإنبات



water

يروي



root

جذر النبات

### Other words



balcony\*  
is called  
sunlight

بلكونة  
يسمى  
ضوء الشمس

inside  
awesome\*

بالداخل  
رائع

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

مضارع

Past

ماض

die

يموت

died

plant

يزرع

planted

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

مضارع

Past

ماض

grow

ينمو / يزرع

grew

find

يجد

found

become

يصبح

became

Help your child learn about the germination process.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن عملية الانبات.



## Study the following

- 1 Why are the tomatoes green? لماذا تكون الطماطم خضراء؟
- 2 Tomatoes are green before they are red. تكون الطماطم خضراء قبل أن تكون حمراء.
- 3 How do we grow new tomatoes? كيف نزرع ثمار طماطم جديدة؟
- 4 Tomatoes have seeds inside. يوجد بذور داخل الطماطم.
- 5 We plant a seed and the plant grows. نزرع البذرة وينمو النبات.
- 6 We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil -- نروي النبات كل يوم وينمو الجذر تحت التربة.
- 7 The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits -- ينمو النبات ليصبح زهور وتصبح الزهور فاكهة الطماطم.

## 1. Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

**Dad** : Come and look!

**Seleem** : What is it, Dad?

**Dad** : Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony! Look, can you see the leaves and the flowers?

**Seleem** : Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes green?

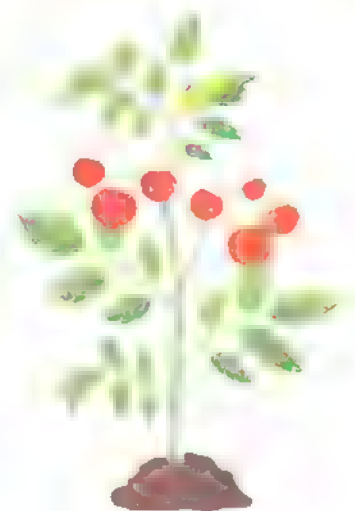
**Dad** : Tomatoes are green before they are red.

**Seleem** : How do we grow new tomatoes?

**Dad** : Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

**Seleem** : That's awesome! And I found a red tomato! Let's have it for lunch!

استمع إلى النص:







## Why do we grow plants?

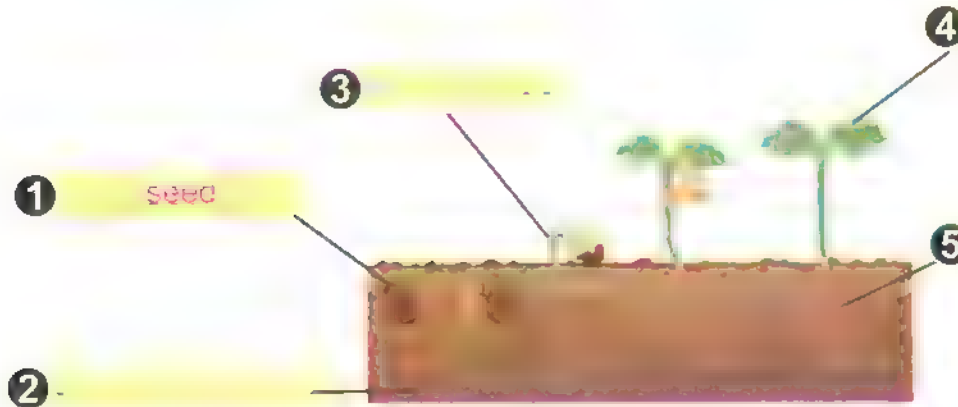


Look and complete:

انظر واكمل:

leaf - roots - seed - shoot - soil

### The germination process



Listen and check:

استمع وتأكد:

استمع إلى النص الآتي وتأكد من خطوات عملية الإنبات في التمرين رقم ٢.

### Tapescript



استمع إلى النص:



#### The Germination process

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then, it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full (الكامل) plant grows leaves and flowers.



#### Did you know?

Did you know that we eat this cacao seed?  
Chocolate comes from this plant.

هل تعلم!

هل تعلم أننا نأكل بذور الكاكاو؟ حيث تأتي الشيكولاتة من هذا النبات.

# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

اقص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Tomatoes are \_\_\_\_\_ before they are red.  
☐ a yellow      ☐ b green      ☐ c brown      ☐ d pink
- Tomatoes have \_\_\_\_\_ inside.  
☐ a seeds      ☐ b leaves      ☐ c trees      ☐ d soil
- We can \_\_\_\_\_ the seeds and grow new tomatoes.  
☐ a cross      ☐ b take      ☐ c eat      ☐ d walk
- Tomatoes need \_\_\_\_\_ to grow.  
☐ a rice      ☐ b food      ☐ c water      ☐ d tea

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The roots grow \_\_\_\_\_ the soil.  
☐ a on      ☐ b above      ☐ c under      ☐ d of
- We put the seeds in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a leaf      ☐ b soil      ☐ c shoot      ☐ d flower
- Mom likes to \_\_\_\_\_ flowers on the balcony.  
☐ a raise      ☐ b feed      ☐ c grow      ☐ d eat
- I \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers every day.  
☐ a become      ☐ b cook      ☐ c drink      ☐ d water

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**soil - watered - roots - seeds - became**

I like planting trees on our balcony. My father helps me. Yesterday, I put  
 ① \_\_\_\_\_ of tomatoes in a pot. I put soil in the pot. I ② \_\_\_\_\_ the  
 seeds and the ③ \_\_\_\_\_ grew under the soil. The plant grew flowers and  
 the flowers ④ \_\_\_\_\_ tomato fruit.



## Why do we grow plants?

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واحب عن الأسئلة:

(2024)

My name is Ahmed. I'm in grade four. At school, our teacher told us how to grow tomatoes. First, you plant the tomatoes seeds in the soil and water them every day. The plant needs water and sunlight to grow. After that, the seeds grow roots under the soil. Then, the shoot grows above the soil. Then, the plant grows above the soil. Finally, the plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomatoes. My tomatoes are very delicious.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ahmed is in grade .....  
☐ a one                      ☐ b two                      ☐ c three                      ☐ d four
- The seeds grow ..... under the soil  
☐ a flowers                      ☐ b grapes                      ☐ c roots                      ☐ d shoot

#### B- Answer the following questions:

- Summarize the main idea of the text in a sentence.
- What does the plant need to grow?

### 5 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how do we grow new tomatoes

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

seeds - roots

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

## Lesson 2

# Plants in Egypt

## Key vocabulary

استمع الى المفردات:



زهرة اللوتس



نبات الاثل



نبات الفول

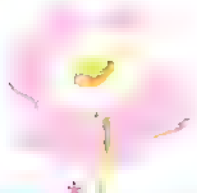


نبات القصب (البوص)

### Plants نباتات



شجرة السنط



زهرة الاقحوان



sunflower  
دوار (عباد) الشمس



rose  
وردة



شجرة البرتقال



بيئة زراعية

### Plant habitats

بيئة أو موطن  
النباتات



بيئة صحراوية



rivers and lakes  
انهار وبحيرات

Help your child learn about plant habitats.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن موطن النباتات.



## Why do we grow plants?

### Other words

### كلمات أخرى



maize

ذرة

eggplant

ثمرة باذنجان

beetle

خنفسة

butterfly

فراشة

suitcase

حقية سفر



### Study the following

- 1 Farmers grow food for us to eat. - يزرع المزارعون الطعام لنا أكله.
- 2 Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water. - تحتاج النباتات القريبة من الأنهار والبحيرات إلى كثير من الماء.
- 3 There is not much rain in the desert. - لا يوجد الكثير من الأمطار في الصحراء.
- 4 Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water. - لا تحتاج النباتات التي تعيش في الصحراء إلى الكثير من الماء.
- 5 How big is the flower? - كم حجم الزهرة؟
- 6 A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. - بيئة الحيوان أو النبات هي مكان تعيش فيه الكائنات الحية وتنمو.



درسنا في الوحدة السابقة المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين،

ندرس في هذا الدرس المقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة أشخاص أو شئ ومجموعة أشياء أو حيوان ومجموعة حيوانات.

**Superlative Adjectives**  
صيغة التفضيل  
العليا للصفات

### 1 الصفات القصيرة

⊙ إذا كانت الصفة قصيرة نضع قبلها (the) وفي آخرها (est).

est + صفة قصيرة + the + الاسم

- The sunflower is the **biggest** flower.
- Ahmed is tall. Fatma is **taller** Ahmed. Karma is **taller** Fatma.
- Karma is the **tallest**.

### 2 الصفات الطويلة

صفة طويلة + الأقل / الأكثر + the most + الاسم

- The rose is the **most** beautiful flower.
- The sunflower is the **least** beautiful flower.

Help your child learn about superlative adjectives.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم مقارنة الصفات العليا.





إذا انتهت الصفة بـ y + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (est):

heavy → **heaviest**

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن عند إضافة (est):

big → **biggest**

thin → **thinnest**

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (st) فقط:

nice → **nicest**

صفات قصيرة	صفات طويلة
tall	beautiful
big	perfect
nice	delicious

ندرس في هذا الدرس الأماكن التي تنمو بها النباتات وما نوع النباتات التي تنمو في كل منطقة:

نهر أو بحيرة River or lake	بيئة زراعية Agricultural	صحراء Desert
1- lotus flower زهرة اللوتس	1- bean plant نبات الفول	1- tamarisk نبات الاثل
2- reed نبات البوص	2- orange tree شجرة البرتقال	2- acacia شجرة السنط



اقرأ عن موطن النباتات وضع اسم كل موطن للنباتات تحت الصورة المناسبة:

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow.

استمع إلى النص:

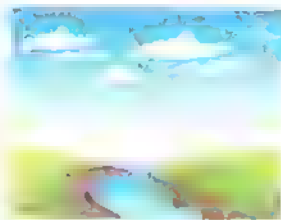


1



Desert habitat

2



3



### 1 Agricultural habitat

Farmers work here. They grow food for us to eat.

### 2 Rivers and lakes

Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

### 3 Desert habitat

There is not much rain here. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

### 2 Match the plants that live in the lake.

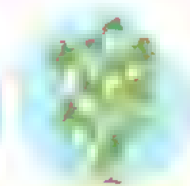
أين تعيش هذه النباتات؟ اكمل الجدول.



lotus  
flower



tamarisk



bean  
plant



reed



acacia



orange  
tree

River or lake	Agricultural	Desert
1- lotus flower	3- _____	5- _____
2- _____	4- _____	6- _____

### 3 Complete the table and read the differences between the flowers.

أنظر الى ملف الحقائق واقرا الفروق بين الزهور.

	 daisy	 rose	 sunflower
How big is the flower?	2.5 - 5 cm	about 6 cm	7.5 - 15 cm
How tall is it?	10 cm	60 cm	1 - 3.5 m
How long does it live?	around 6 days	around 10 days	around 2 weeks
How heavy is it?	around 20 g	around 50 g	around 200 g



4 Read and answer T (True) or F (False):

أقرأ واجب بنعم أو لا:

True False

- 1 The rose is smaller than the daisy.
- 2 The sunflower is taller than the daisy.
- 3 The sunflower is the biggest flower.
- 4 The rose lives the longest.
- 5 The daisy is the heaviest.

5

اكتب الجمل باستخدام صيغة المقارنة للنباتات والحيوانات (استخدم صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل كما في المثال):

1. (cat / snake / fox / scary)

A fox is scarier than a cat. A snake is scarier than a fox. A snake is the scariest.

2. (maize / bean / eggplant / delicious)

3. (grape / orange / lemon / big)

4. (bee / beetle / butterfly / beautiful)





# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Acacia grows in the \_\_\_\_\_ habitat. It doesn't need much water.

- ☐ a desert      ☐ b lake      ☐ c river      ☐ d sea

2. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ does a rose live? B: Around 10 days.

- ☐ a after      ☐ b many      ☐ c long      ☐ d tall

3. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ is the sunflower? B: Around 200g.

- ☐ a tall      ☐ b heavy      ☐ c big      ☐ d far

4. Plants in the desert habitat don't need a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a sugar      ☐ b water      ☐ c sand      ☐ d trees

5. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a place where living things live and grow.

- ☐ a space      ☐ b sun      ☐ c habitat      ☐ d sky

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

rain - desert - grow - lakes - seeds

There are different plant habitats in our world. They are agricultural, rivers and lakes and ❶ \_\_\_\_\_ habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers ❷ \_\_\_\_\_ food for us. In the desert, there isn't much ❸ \_\_\_\_\_ and plants don't need much water. Plants near the river and ❹ \_\_\_\_\_ need a lot of water.

## 3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The red flower is the \_\_\_\_\_ (more) beautiful. (2026)

2. Ahmed is the \_\_\_\_\_ (tall) boy in our class. (2026)

3. The elephant is the \_\_\_\_\_ (bigger) animal. (2026)

4. The rose is the ..... (nice) flower.
5. The sunflower is ..... (than) biggest flower.
6. The daisy is the ..... (heavier) .
7. A snake is ..... (smallest) than a fox.
8. A lion is the ..... (strong) animal.
9. I think the eggplant is the ..... (more) delicious plant.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

how heavy is the daisy

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

rose - beautiful

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة



# Lesson 3

## A short story Math - Pronunciation

### Key vocabulary

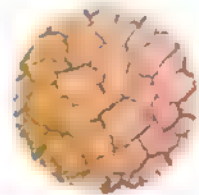
استمع إلى المفردات:



مزرعة



أرض



جاف



ضوضاء

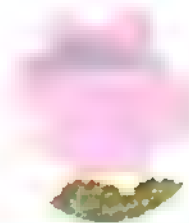
A short  
story  
قصة  
قصيرة



لتر

1,000,000

\* مليون



مياه الأمطار

1,000,000,000

\* مليار

### Other words

### الولايات المتحدة



the United States

الولايات المتحدة

grandparents

اجداد

polluted air

هواء ملوث

life

الحياة

work hard

يعمل بجد

proud of

فخور به

on the farm

في المزرعة

Help your child learn new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

decide	يقرر
live	يعيش
plant	يزرع
breathe	يتنفس

Past ماضٍ

decided
lived
planted
breathed

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

grow	يزرع
take	يأخذ
give	يعطي

Past ماضٍ

grew
took
gave

## Describe a story

boring

ممل

OK

جيد

interesting

شيق

I don't understand.

لم افهم.

## Study the following

- 1 The land was very dry. - كانت الأرض جافة جدًا.
- 2 They didn't like the polluted air and the noise. - لم يحبوا الهواء الملوث والضوضاء.
- 3 They decided to buy some land. - قرروا أن يشتروا بعض من الأرض.
- 4 They used rainwater to water the seeds. - استخدموا مياه الأمطار ليسقوا البذور.
- 5 They needed about a billion liters of water a year. - احتاجوا حوالي مليار لتر من المياه في السنة.
- 6 They are very proud of Lucas's grandparents. - هم فخوريين جدًا بأجداد لوكس.



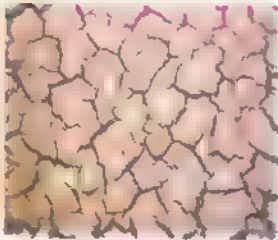
## Why do we grow plants?

1

Look at the photos. What can you see? What do the story is about?

انظر إلى الصور. ماذا ترى؟ وفي رأيك ما الموضوع الذي تدور حوله القصة؟

1



2



3



2

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

استمع إلى النص:



### Lucas and his farm

Lucas lives on a farm in the **United States**. It is a very **special farm**. Forty years ago, the land was very **dry**. There were no farms. No one wanted to live there.

Lucas's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They didn't like the **polluted air** and the **noise**. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land.

**At first**, life was very difficult. They worked very hard and they planted **millions** of seeds. They used **rainwater** to water the seeds. They needed about **a billion** liters of water a year.

They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. They brought animals to the land. They planted trees and flowers.

Today, Lucas lives on the farm with his mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good life. They are very **proud** of Lucas's grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

- ١- الولايات المتحدة
- ٢- مررعة حاصة
- ٣- جاف
- ٤- هواء ملوث
- ٥- صوصاء
- ٦- في البداية
- ٧- ملايين
- ٨- مياه الامطار
- ٩- مليار
- ١٠- فخور

Help your child read a short story.

ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ قصة قصيرة.



# CLIL: MATH

تعرف على الأرقام حتى المليار:

100

a hundred  
مائة

1,000

a thousand  
الف

10,000

ten thousand  
عشرة آلاف

100,000

a hundred thousand  
مائة ألف

1,000,000

a million  
مليون

100,000,000

a hundred million  
مائة مليون

1,000,000,000

a billion  
مليار

## Place value

القيمة المكانية

ones	tens	hundreds
آحاد	عشرات	مئات
thousands	ten thousands	hundred thousands
آلاف	عشرات الآلاف	مئات الآلاف
millions	ten millions	hundred millions
ملايين	عشرات الملايين	مئات الملايين
		billions
		مليارات



لاحظ

A billion is a thousand million: 1,000,000,000

المليار يساوي ألف مليون.



## Why do we grow plants?

- ◀ ندرس في هذا الدرس القيمة المكانية للأعداد. حيث هناك فرق بين قيمة العدد والقيمة المكانية.  
 ◀ فمثلا العدد (5) قيمته المكانية في الرقم (150) تساوي (50) والعدد (1) قيمته (100).  
 ◀ ادرس الآتي:

ones	أحاد	→	[1-9]
tens	عشرات	→	[10-99]
hundreds	مئات	→	[100-999]
thousands	آلاف	→	[1000-9,999]
ten thousands	عشرات الآلاف	→	[10,000-99,999]
hundred thousands	مئات الآلاف	→	[100,000-999,999]
millions	الملايين	→	[1,000,000-9,999,999]
ten millions	عشرات الملايين	→	[10,000,000-99,999,999]
hundred millions	مئات الملايين	→	[100,000,000-999,999,999]
billions	مليارات	→	[1,000,000,000]

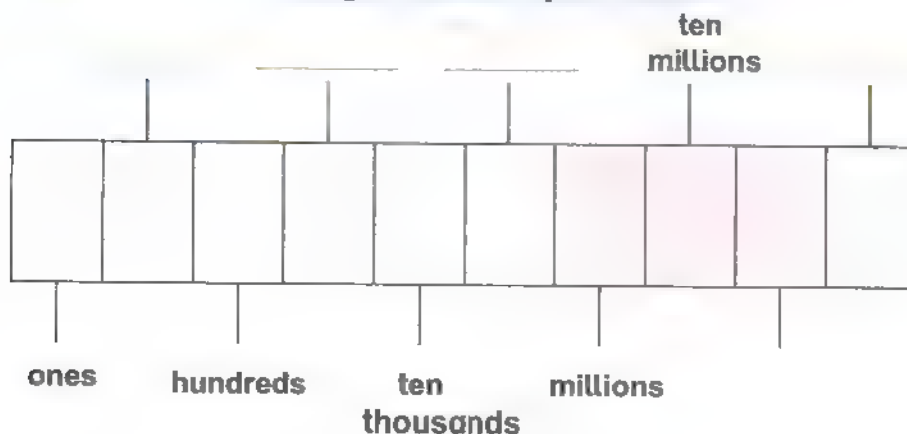
- Egypt wants to plant more than 100 million palm trees across the country. This means we need to plant billions of seeds.

الترتيب من الأصغر إلى الأكبر: ones - tens - hundreds - thousands - millions - ten millions - hundred thousands - billions

انظر وضع الكلمات في المكان الصحيح:

billions - hundred millions - hundred thousands - tens - thousands

### Large numbers up to billions



2

Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

1 1,000,000,000

2 100,000,000

3 1,000

4 100,000

5 10,000

a. a thousand

b ten thousand

c a billion

d. a hundred million

e a hundred thousand

## Pronunciation

★ Listen and say: استمع وقل

استمع إلى المفردات:



swan

بجعة

swim

يعوم



sweets

حلوى

/sw/ words



sweep

يكنس



switch

مفتاح الكهرباء

slice

شريحة

slippers

شيشب

/t/ words



sleep

ينام

لاحظ نضيف اللاحقة (ful) آخر كثير من الأفعال أو الأسماء لتكوين صفات تعني (مليء بـ):

Noun اسم / Verb فعل

Adjective صفة

color	لون	colorful	زاهي / كثير الألوان
beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل
care	يعني بـ	careful	حريص
help	يساعد	helpful	متعاون
use	يستخدم	useful	مفيد



1

صل:

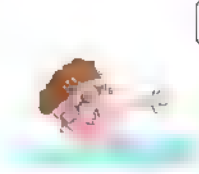
swim

slice

swan

slippers

1



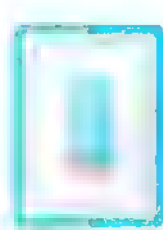
2



3



4



5



6



7



8



sweets

sweep

sleep

switch

2

We have the words in the box. Find the words in the box. Write the meaning of the words in a dictionary.

نستخدم اللاحقة (ful) آخر كثير من الصفات لتعني (مليء بـ) اوجد كلمات في المربع الآتي. تأكد من معاني الكلمات في القاموس.

beautiful

careful

colorful

helpful

useful

s	l	i	h	e	p	y	u	c	m
c	a	r	e	f	u	l	i	o	w
e	s	t	l	r	g	b	w	l	h
d	w	s	p	a	n	r	t	o	t
u	s	e	f	u	l	d	u	r	d
e	h	i	u	s	w	i	t	f	h
u	p	m	l	n	g	e	o	u	b
b	e	a	u	t	i	f	u	l	e

# Activities



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My sister is ..... the floor.

- ☐ a swimming      ☐ b sweeping      ☐ c sleeping      ☐ d eating

2. Farmers grow many ..... like oranges and lemons.

- ☐ a drinks      ☐ b vegetables      ☐ c fruits      ☐ d animals

3. The ..... are swimming in the river.

- ☐ a swans      ☐ b sweets      ☐ c slippers      ☐ d shoes

4. Forty years ago, the land was very ..... There were no farms.

- ☐ a good      ☐ b dry      ☐ c excited      ☐ d funny

5. They wanted a billion ..... of water every year.

- ☐ a kilos      ☐ b liters      ☐ c centimeters      ☐ d grams

6. The farmers use ..... to water the farm.

- ☐ a soil      ☐ b roots      ☐ c rainwater      ☐ d leaves

7. I don't like the ..... air in the city, so I will live in the village.

- ☐ a fresh      ☐ b polluted      ☐ c good      ☐ d beautiful

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2024)

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

green - billion - rainwater - life - fruits

My grandparents had a farm. They grew many ❶ ..... They used ❷ ..... to water the plants. They needed about a ❸ ..... liters of water a year. They used plants to make the land ❹ .....

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My grandparents had a farm in Giza. They bought it twenty years ago. They wanted to live in the village because the city was very noisy. They planted many kinds of fruits and vegetables. They kept many animals like cows, goats and sheep.





## Why do we grow plants?

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The grandparents bought the farm \_\_\_\_\_ years ago.

☐ a 10

☐ b 20

☐ c 30

☐ d 25

2. The farm was in .....

☐ a Cairo

☐ b Giza

☐ c Luxor

☐ d Aswan

### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did they want to live in the village?

4. What animals did they keep on the farm?

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

do you want a slice of pizza

### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

#### Your uncle's farm

1- Where is your uncle's farm?

2- What does your uncle grow?



# Lessons

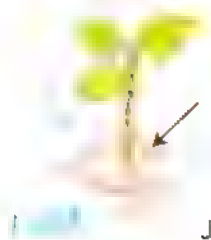
# 4&5

# Life cycle of a sunflower

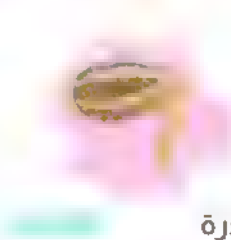


## Key vocabulary

اسمع إلى المفردات:



جذر



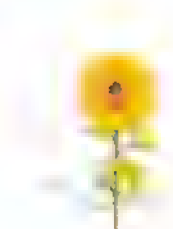
بذرة



تربة



نبته



sunflower دوار (عباد) الشمس



process عملية



papyrus\* البردي



Nile Delta دلتا النيل



paper ورق



basket سلة



sandals صندل



leaves ورق الشجر

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

face	يواجه
germinate	ينبت
die	يموت
drop	يرمي / يلقى
start	يبدأ

#### Past ماضٍ

faced
germinated
died
dropped
started

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

put	يضع
grow	ينمو
begin	يبدأ

#### Past ماضٍ

put
grew
began

Help your child learn new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.

## Study the following

1 ندرس فى هذا الدرس مراحل نمو (دورة حياة) زهرة عباد الشمس والكلمات المستخدمة فى ترتيب عملية ما من البداية للنهاية:

First → Next → After that → Finally  
أولاً التالى بعد ذلك أخيراً

- First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil.  - أولاً: نضع بذور عباد الشمس فى التربة.
- Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.  - ثانياً: تثبت البذور وتبدأ فى نمو الجذور تحت التربة.
- After that, the shoot grows above the soil.  - بعد ذلك تنمو البتة أعلى التربة.
- After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.  - بعد أربعة اشهر تفتح زهرة عباد الشمس وتواجه الشمس.
- Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds.  - أخيراً تموت زهرة عباد الشمس وتسقط بذورها.



2 ندرس ايضا معلومات عن أهمية نبات مصرى وهو البردى:

• Why was papyrus an important plant? لماذا كان نبات البردى مهم؟

1. Because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper. - لأن المصريين القدماء استخدموه لعمل الورق.
2. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. - صنعوا أيضاً الصنادل والسلال من البردى.
3. Papyrus can help to clean water. - ساعد البردى فى تنظيف الماء.



- What does the plant need? ماذا يحتاج النبات؟
- A lot of water and warm weather. - كثير من الماء وطقس دافئ.
- Where does it live? أين يعيش البردى؟
- Near the Nile. - بالقرب من النيل.

Listen and read about the life cycle of a sunflower:

استمع وأقرأ عن دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس،

استمع إلى النص:



First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. Water the seed.



Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.



After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows leaves. It gets taller.



After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.



Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

Help your child learn about the life cycle of a sunflower.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن دورة حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.



### 2 Order the life cycle of a tomato.

رتب دورة حياة ثمرة الطماطم.

1



2



3



4



5



1 Finally, the tomato plant dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

2 After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows taller.

Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil.

First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You water it.

1

After a few weeks, the plant grows leaves, flowers and tomatoes.

### 3 Work in groups. Think and research:

اعمل في ثنائيات. فكر وابحث.

#### A report about a plant

##### Find an Egyptian plant.

اقرأ التقرير ثم أجب عن الأسئلة.

##### Papyrus

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.



Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

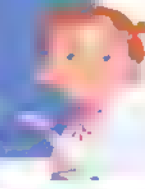


1. Why is it an important plant?

2. What does the plant need?

3. Where does it live?

# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اسمغ وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصالحة:

فص الاستماع لغير الكتاب



1. Papyrus is a very special .....

- ☐ a animal      ☐ b plant      ☐ c food      ☐ d vegetables

2. Ancient ..... used papyrus to make many things.

- ☐ a French      ☐ b Italians      ☐ c Egyptians      ☐ d British

3. They used papyrus to make .....

- ☐ a juice      ☐ b paper      ☐ c dessert      ☐ d tea

4. Papyrus grows near the .....

- ☐ a Nile      ☐ b beach      ☐ c farm      ☐ d desert

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصالحة:

1. The sunflower dies and drops its .....

- ☐ a seeds      ☐ b soil      ☐ c roots      ☐ d paper

2. Ancient Egyptians made ..... and baskets from papyrus.

- ☐ a trains      ☐ b cars      ☐ c rocks      ☐ d sandals

3. The plant needs a lot of water and warm .....

- ☐ a fire      ☐ b weather      ☐ c salt      ☐ d sugar

4. The shoot grows above the .....

- ☐ a soil      ☐ b sky      ☐ c sun      ☐ d star

5. Egyptians used papyrus to make .....

- ☐ a metal      ☐ b plastic      ☐ c baskets      ☐ d wool

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

Finally - roots - dies - First - germinates

I want to plant a sunflower. ❶ \_\_\_\_\_, I put the seeds in the soil. Next, the seed ❷ \_\_\_\_\_ and starts to grow ❸ \_\_\_\_\_ under the soil. ❹ \_\_\_\_\_, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Papyrus is a very special plant that grows in the Nile Delta. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make

- ☐ a food                      ☐ b paper                      ☐ c clothes                      ☐ d roots

2. The main idea of the passage is about .....

- ☐ a water                      ☐ b gas                      ☐ c papyrus                      ☐ d money

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What is papyrus?

4. Where does it live?

**5 Punctuate the following:**

(ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what does papyrus need

2. the shoot grows above the soil

# Review



## The germination process عملية الانبات



seed

بذرة



water

يروي



shoot / فسيلة / نبتة



soil

تربة



root جذر النبات



leaf

ورقة شجر



flower

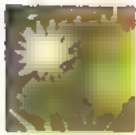
وردة



tomato

ثمرة طماطم

## Plants نباتات



lotus flower

زهرة اللوتس



tamarisk

نبات الاثل



bean plant

نبات الفول



reed

نبات القصب



acacia

شجرة السط



daisy

زهرة الاقحوان



sunflower

عباد الشمس



rose

وردة



orange tree

شجرة البرتقال



papyrus

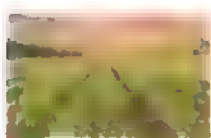
ورق البردى

## A short story قصة قصيرة



noise

ضوضاء



farm

مزرعة



land

ارض



liter

لتر



rainwater

مياه الامطار



dry

جاف





## Why do we grow plants?

### Math الرياضيات

100

a hundred  
مائة

1,000

a thousand  
الف

10,000

ten thousand  
عشرة الاف

100,000

a hundred thousand  
مائة الف

1,000,000

a million  
مليون

100,000,000

a hundred million  
مائة مليون

1,000,000,000

a billion  
مليار



ندرس في هذا الدرس المقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة أشخاص أو شئ ومجموعة اشياء أو حيوان ومجموعة حيوانات.



**Superlative Adjectives**  
صيغة التفضيل  
العليا للصفات

#### 1 الصفات القصيرة

est + صفة قصيرة + the + الاسم

-The elephant is the biggest animal on land.

#### 2 الصفات الطويلة

the most / least + صفة طويلة + الاسم

-This bird is the least beautiful bird.

-The snake is the most dangerous animal.

**لاحظ**

إذا انتهت الصفة بـ y + حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضع (est):

heavy → heaviest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن عند اضافة (est):

big → biggest

thin → thinnest

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضيف (st) فقط:

nice → nicest



## تدريبات على نطق الكلمات

- ١ لنطق كلمة (balcony) بشكل صحيح انطق حرف (a) كما ينطق في كلمة (man) وانطق حرف (o) كما ينطق في كلمة (second).
- ٢ لنطق كلمة (awesome) انطق الحروف (awe) مثل نطق حرفي (oo) في كلمة (door) وانطق حرف (o) في (some) كما ينطق في كلمة (second) ولا تنطق حرف (e).
- ٣ لنطق كلمة (shoot) انطق حرفي (oo) كما ينطقان مثل كلمة (moon).
- ٤ في كلمة (agricultural) حرفي (tu) ينطقان مثل (تش) في اللغة العربية.
- ٥ لنطق كلمة (habitat) انطق حرفي (a) في أول وآخر الكلمة كما ينطق في كلمة (man).
- ٦ كلمة (reed) تنطق مثل كلمة (seed) تمامًا مع اختلاف أول حرف.
- ٧ كلمة (acacia) ينطق حرف (a) الأول مثل (o) في كلمة (second) وحرف الـ (a) الثاني ينطق مثل حرف (a) في كلمة (make) والمقطع الصوتي (ci) ينطق مثل (ش) في اللغة العربية.
- ٨ في كلمة (daisy) انطق المقطع الصوتي (da) مثل كلمة (day) وحرف (s) ينطق مثل (z).
- ٩ لنطق كلمة (billion) و (million) انطق حرف (i) الأول مثل نطقه في (bin) وحرف (i) الثاني مثل نطق (y) في (yes) وحرف (o) كما ينطق في (second).
- ١٠ في كلمة (papyrus) انطق حرفي (u/a) مثل نطق حرف (o) في (second) وانطق (py) مثل نطق (pie) تمامًا.







Write a paragraph of  
**EIGHTEEN (18) words.**

## Answers to Paragraphs

### Lesson 1

#### The Germination process

- 1 In this process, we put a seed in soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so, it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then, it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

### Lesson 2

- 2 Plants are beautiful. They are also different. The rose is taller than the daisy. The daisy is colorful. The sunflower is the heaviest.

### Lesson 3

#### My uncle's farm

- 3 My uncle's farm is in Sharkia. My uncle grows a lot of plants. He keeps a lot of animals. My uncle raises chickens and ducks, too. I play with the ducks.

### Activity - Unit 3

#### Sunflowers

- 4 Sunflowers are beautiful. A sunflower faces the sun every day. Farmers grow sunflowers to take their seeds. The seeds of the sunflowers are useful. I like sunflowers.



# Al-Azhar Exercises

الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

## A- Listening

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

نص الاستماع اختر الإجابة



1. Samir is my \_\_\_\_\_.

(father - brother - friend)

2. He wants to be a \_\_\_\_\_.

(teacher - doctor - vet)

3. Samir and his friend go to school by \_\_\_\_\_.

(car - bus - train)

## B- Language Functions

### 2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل:

seeds - need - sunflowers - doing

A : What are you \_\_\_\_\_?

B : I'm growing \_\_\_\_\_ on our balcony.

A : What do you \_\_\_\_\_ to grow them?

B : Soil, \_\_\_\_\_ and water.

## C- Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend Salim likes farms and plants. He likes the green color of the leaves. He likes to use the seeds to grow new plants. He waters the plants every day. The roots grow under the soil. My friend Salim becomes very happy when there is a flower.

#### A: Answer the following questions:

1. What does Salim like? \_\_\_\_\_

2. When does Salim become very happy? \_\_\_\_\_

#### B: Choose the correct answer:

3. My friend Salim likes the \_\_\_\_\_ color of the leaves.

(green - yellow - red)

4. Salim waters the plants every \_\_\_\_\_.

(week - day - year)

5. Salim likes to use the seeds to \_\_\_\_\_ new plants.

(eat - play - grow)



## Why do we grow plants?

### D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My city is the ..... place to live in.

☐ a nice

☐ b nicer

☐ c nicest

2. I think koshari is the ..... delicious food.

☐ a more

☐ b much

☐ c most

3. .... grow food for us to eat.

☐ a Teachers

☐ b Farmers

☐ c Doctors

4. The sunflower is the ..... flower.

☐ a biggest

☐ b big

☐ c bigger

5. A: ..... does it live? B: Near the river.

☐ a Where

☐ b What

☐ c When

### E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. does - What - need - plant - the?

2. have - inside - Tomatoes - seeds.

3. water - the - sun - every - plant - day .

4. grows - near - Pond - river - the.

5. beautiful - the - sunflower - flower - is - most.

# Activities on Unit 3



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. There are different plant .....

- ☐ a caves      ☐ b tents      ☐ c habitats      ☐ d food

2. Papyrus grows in the ..... habitat.

- ☐ a desert      ☐ b river      ☐ c seed      ☐ d agricultural

3. Papyrus needs .....

- ☐ a oil      ☐ b juice      ☐ c water      ☐ d tea

4. Orange trees need ..... habitat.

- ☐ a river      ☐ b sea      ☐ c agricultural      ☐ d desert

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The tomato plant dies and ..... its seeds.

- ☐ a opens      ☐ b gets      ☐ c drops      ☐ d grows

2. I'm ..... of my parents.

- ☐ a proud      ☐ b colorful      ☐ c nicest      ☐ d heavy

3. The plant needs water, ..... and warm weather.

- ☐ a money      ☐ b soil      ☐ c boil      ☐ d fire

4. Ancient Egyptians used ..... to make baskets.

- ☐ a sunflower      ☐ b papyrus      ☐ c books      ☐ d sunlight

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**proud - plants - worked - rainwater - dry**

My father is a farmer. When he was thirty years old, he bought some farms. The farms were ❶ ....., but my father ❷ ..... very hard and planted a lot of seeds and used ❸ ..... to water the seeds. Now, I'm on the farms and we have a lot of crops. I'm ❹ ..... of my father.



### Why do we grow plants?

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed lives on a farm near Benha. It's a very special farm. He grows a lot of plants there. He grows maize and gives it to the animals on the farm to feed them. Ahmed grows many fruits like oranges and lemons. Ahmed lives a good life. He is happy because he grows his food himself.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed grows oranges and .....

a pears

b lemons

c apples

d peaches

2. Ahmed has a farm near .....

a Benha

b Cairo

c Tanta

d Giza

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why is Ahmed happy?

.....

4. What does Ahmed give to the animals?

.....

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This daisy is ..... (shortest).

2. Snakes are the ..... (scary) animal.

3. The sunflower is the ..... (heavy) .

4. The butterfly is the ..... (more) beautiful insect.

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i have two black slippers

.....

#### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

beautiful - faces

مجاوب عنه اخر الوحدة

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Review 1



## Objectives of Review 1

## أهداف المراجعة

### Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللفوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

### Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ١ إلى ٣.

2. To evaluate progress in Units 1- 3.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.



1 Listen and write:

استمع واكتب:

استمع إلى المفردات:



نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

Start

1-



2-



3-



6-



5-



4-



7-



8-



9-



12-



11-



10-



13-



14-

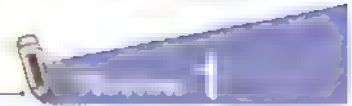


15-



Finish





2

انظر واكتب الكلمات التي تراها ثم صل

1- nose

2- c

3- m

4- s

5- s

6- s

7- p

8- b



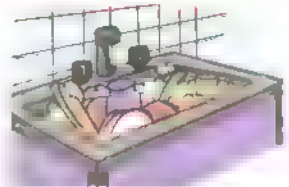
3

اكمل الجمل بأفعال تبدأ ب (re)

paint - make - clean - do



1 Today I need to **redo** my homework.



2 The kitchen was clean this morning, but now I need to **clean** it.



3 I need to **paint** my garden table.



4 I burnt the pancakes - I have to **make** them.

4

Complete the table

اكمل الجدول

1. **taller**  
big  
heavy  
5. **the tallest**  
delicious

2. **the heaviest**  
4. **the most beautiful**  
6. **the tallest**  
7. **the heaviest**

3. **the tallest**  
the heaviest  
the most beautiful  
8. **the tallest**



# Lesson 2

## Units 1 - 2 & 3

1

or superlative verb.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للصيغ المقارنة ،

1. I think the cheetah is (fast) animal.

I think the cheetah is the fastest animal.

2. An elephant is than a mouse.

3. I think beans are than potatoes.

1

افضل واكمل بكلمات من الاطار :

close - desert - drink - flat - fur - important - milk - sand - strong

I love camels. They  
are very ① animals in  
Egypt. They are ② and they can carry  
people and things across the ③

They are tall animals, with thin legs.

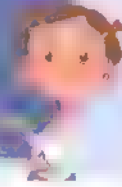
Their ④ is delicious and we can use their ⑤ to  
make clothes.

Camels are good animals for the desert because they don't

⑥ a lot of water. Their feet are ⑦ so they can  
walk on sand in the desert. They can ⑧ their noses and eyes to  
stop the ⑨ from coming in.



# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Camels can ..... people and things.

- ☐ a watch      ☐ b play      ☐ c feed      ☐ d carry

2. Camels are ..... animals.

- ☐ a short      ☐ b tall      ☐ c fat      ☐ d small

3. Camels have delicious .....

- ☐ a water      ☐ b milk      ☐ c juice      ☐ d fur

4. Camels are good for the .....

- ☐ a village      ☐ b city      ☐ c desert      ☐ d lakes

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I don't like ..... food, but I drink cola.

- ☐ a healthy      ☐ b good      ☐ c nice      ☐ d unhealthy

2. The pelican has a big .....

- ☐ a arm      ☐ b beak      ☐ c neck      ☐ d paw

3. Everyone tries to ..... in a competition.

- ☐ a lose      ☐ b raise      ☐ c travel      ☐ d win

4. People in Egypt ..... rice.

- ☐ a grow      ☐ b draw      ☐ c play      ☐ d write

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

useful - opens - yellow - garden - plants

My name's Emad. I like ..... very much. I grow many plants in my ..... I grow sunflowers, too. The sunflower is a big flower. It's always ..... in color. It's very beautiful and .....

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. Each plant lives in a special habitat. We can't grow lotus flowers in desert habitat because they need a lot of water. They grow near lakes or rivers. Farmers need agricultural habitat to grow food for us. The soil in this habitat is good for growing many crops.

##### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "this" refers to ..... habitat.  
☐ a rivers                      ☐ b agricultural                      ☐ c desert                      ☐ d lakes
- The main idea in the passage is about .....  
☐ a habitats                      ☐ b houses                      ☐ c schools                      ☐ d trains

##### B. Answer the following questions:

- Why can't we grow lotus flowers in the desert?
- What habitat do farmers need to grow many crops?

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I like animals, ..... (and) I don't like insects.
- This story is the ..... (much) interesting.
- My friend Ahmed is ..... (tallest) than me.
- Let's ..... (grew) plants in our garden.

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

the sunflower is the biggest flower

#### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

strong - milk

Write and draw

Theme

2

Unit 4

## Myself and others

### Where do you live?

أين تعيش؟



#### Objectives of the Unit

#### أهداف الوحدة

- 1 Listen, read, research, and write about different houses and places in a town.  
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن أنواع المنازل المختلفة والأماكن في المدينة.
- 2 Practice making sentences with prepositions.  
- يتدرب الطالب على تكوين جمل بها حروف جر.
- 3 Read and listen to a short story.  
- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
- 4 Learn about and say words with /f/ and /v/ sounds.  
- يتعلم الطالب ويقول كلمات بها الصوتين /f/ و /v/.
- 5 Write a short article about your village or city.  
- يكتب الطالب مقال قصير عن قريته أو مدينته.
- 6 Research and make a poster.  
- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ويعمل بوستر.



# Lesson

## At home

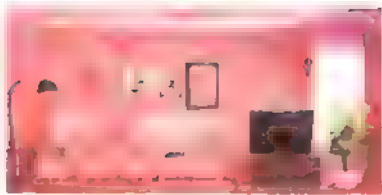


### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



bedroom حجرة نوم



living room حجرة المعيشة



kitchen مطبخ

### Inside the house

داخل  
المنزل



bathroom\* حمام



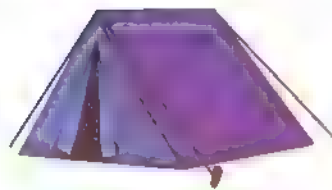
dining\* room حجرة الطعام



study حجرة



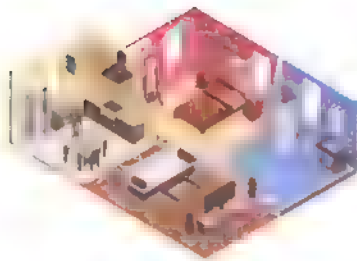
balcony بلكونة



tent خيمة



house منزل



apartment شقة

## Different houses

المنازل المختلفة



houseboat قارب للسكن

## Adjectives



lovely  
fantastic

جميل  
رائع

favorite  
whole\*

مفضل  
بالكامل

## Other words



for me  
too  
cloth  
quietly  
take a shower

بالنسبة لي  
جداً / ايضاً  
قماش  
بهدوء  
يستخدم

outside  
inside  
sounds good  
building

بالخارج  
بالداخل  
يبدو رائع  
مبنى

## Conjugation of verbs



### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

organize يُرتب organized  
move to ينتقل إلى (يعزل) moved to  
relax يسترخي / يستريح relaxed

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

do homework يعمل الواجب المنزلي did homework  
see يرى saw  
sleep ينام slept  
sit يجلس sat



## Where do you live?

### Language Functions

Can you help me?

Yes, sure.

للموافقة:

Sorry, I can't.

لللرفض:

Let's + inf مصدر الفعل.

- Let's do it.

1  
لطلب  
المساعدة

2  
للإقتراح

نتعلم أيضاً الأشكال المختلفة للمنازل وما يميز كل منزل:

house	It is big.	يكون كبير.
apartment	has a balcony	بها بلكونة
tent	made of cloth	تصنع من القماش
houseboat	on the water	يكون على الماء

### Study the following

- 1 Look at our lovely new apartment! - انظر إلى شقتنا الجميلة الجديدة!
- 2 Which is your favorite room? - أى حجرة مفضلة لديك؟
- 3 I can relax and do my homework quietly. - يمكن أن استرخي وأقوم بعمل واجبي المنزلي في هدوء.
- 4 I can see the whole street. - أستطيع أن أرى الشارع بالكامل.
- 5 Can you help me organize the kitchen? - هل يمكن أن تساعدني في ترتيب المطبخ؟
- 6 That sounds good, let's do it! - هذا يبدو رائعاً. هيا نفعلها!
- 7 I talk to my family and watch television. - أتكلّم مع عائلتي وأشاهد التلفاز.
- 8 I eat dinner with my family in the dining room. - أتناول العشاء مع عائلتي في غرفة الطعام.
- 9 I take a shower in the bathroom. - أستحم في الحمام.



Listen and read: Where are Mom and Talia?

استمع واقرأ: أين الأم وتاليا؟



استمع إلى النص:

**Mom** : Look at our lovely new apartment!

**Talia** : It's fantastic!

**Mom** : Which is your favorite room?

**Talia** : For me it's my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework quietly.

**Mom** : My favorite is the living room with the balcony.

I can see the whole street! Talia, can you help me organize the kitchen?

**Talia** : That sounds good, let's do it!



Listen again and answer the questions:

استمع مرة أخرى واجب عن الأسئلة:

1- What are they talking about?

١- عن ماذا كانا يتحدثان؟

2- What is Mom's favorite room? Why?

٢- ما الحجرة المفضلة للأم؟ لماذا؟

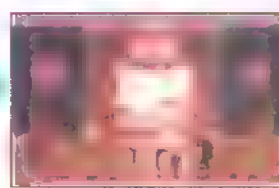


اختر وصلى (كما بالمثال):

اختر وصل (كما بالمثال):

1- kitchen

☒ c



2- bedroom

☐

3- bathroom

☐

4- living room

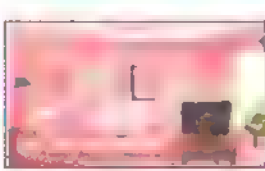
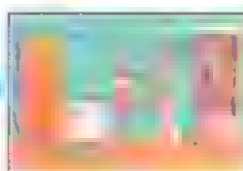
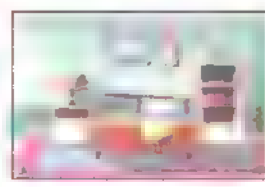
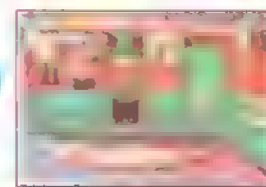
☐

5- dining room

☐

6- balcony

☐



Help your child listen and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.





Where do you live?

4

Listen and write the correct room:

استمع واكتب العجيرة الصحيحة:

Tapescript

نص الاستماع



- 1- I cook food in this room. It's the .....
- 2- I sleep here. It's the .....
- 3- I talk to my family and watch television in this room. ....
- 4- I take a shower in this room. ....
- 5- I love to sit here. I can see the people in the street. ....
- 6- I eat dinner with my family here. ....

5

Look and read. Then read and complete:

انظر واقرأ. ثم اقرأ واكمل:

1. My aunt moved to a new apartment with her family. They are very happy because they have a big balcony.



tent

2. My friend and her family live on a ..... It's small, but she loves living on water.



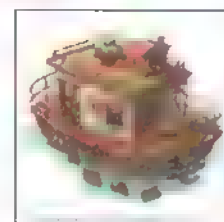
apartment



house

3. In the desert, some people live in a ..... This home is made of cloth.

4. I love living in a ..... because it is a big building. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.



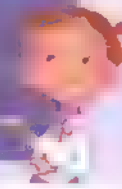
houseboat



Help your child read and complete.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل.

# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. There are \_\_\_\_\_ rooms in a new apartment.  
☐ a two      ☐ b four      ☐ c three      ☐ d five
2. My favorite room is the \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a bedroom      ☐ b kitchen      ☐ c living room      ☐ d dining room
3. There's a big \_\_\_\_\_ in the living room.  
☐ a balcony      ☐ b TV      ☐ c table      ☐ d bed
4. My \_\_\_\_\_ can cook food quietly.  
☐ a grandma      ☐ b sister      ☐ c cousin      ☐ d mom

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I sleep in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a kitchen      ☐ b bathroom      ☐ c bedroom      ☐ d balcony
2. I help my mom \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen.  
☐ a relax      ☐ b organize      ☐ c sound      ☐ d burn
3. Some people live in a/an \_\_\_\_\_ in the desert.  
☐ a tent      ☐ b houseboat      ☐ c apartment      ☐ d river
4. I live in a \_\_\_\_\_. I love living on water.  
☐ a tent      ☐ b houseboat      ☐ c kitchen      ☐ d desert

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**balcony - clean - relax - favorite - because**

Our family moved to a new apartment last week. It's fantastic. My ❶ \_\_\_\_\_ room is the living room with the ❷ \_\_\_\_\_. Yesterday, I helped my mom to ❸ \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen. My sister's favorite room is the bedroom because she can ❹ \_\_\_\_\_ and do her homework quietly.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.





## Where do you live?

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: (المعجمية - أدوات الساعات) (2024)

Hello! My name is Hamza. I want to tell you about myself. I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room, it's lovely with the balcony. I can see the whole street. I play games with my brother in the living room. I help my mother in the kitchen. I play football on Friday with my friend.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The underlined word "lovely" means .....  
☐ a bad                      ☐ b ugly                      ☐ c beautiful                      ☐ d heavy
- Hamza plays games with his .....  
☐ a sister                      ☐ b brother                      ☐ c friend                      ☐ d cousin

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What's Hamza's favorite room?

4. When does Hamza play football?

### 5 Punctuate the following:

صع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

i live in a big house

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إشتائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

My bedroom

favorite - sleep

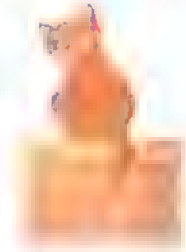
# Lesson 2

## Where is it?

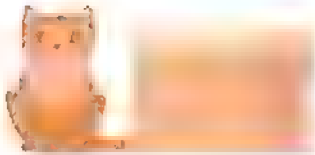


### Key vocabulary

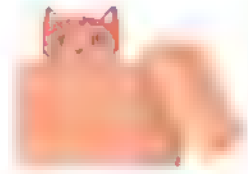
استمع إلى المفردات:



على



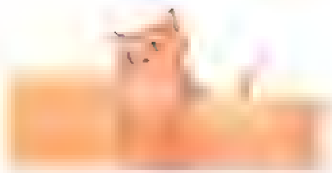
بجوار



في

### Prepositions of place

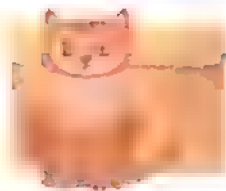
حروف الجر  
الخاصة بالمكان



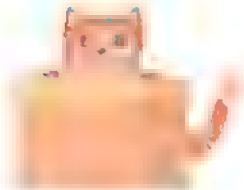
بين between



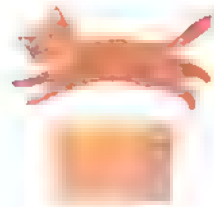
تحت under



امام in front of



خلف behind



فوق / أعلى above

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان. Help your child learn about prepositions of place.



## Where do you live?



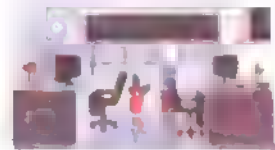
استمع إلى المفردات،



مدرسة school



مكتب البريد post office



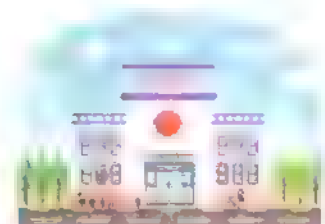
مكتب office



سوبر ماركت supermarket

## Public places

اماكن عامة



مستشفى hospital



حديقة عامة park



مركز للتسوق shopping mall\*



متحف

## Other words

village

قرية

couch\*

كنبة

letter

خطاب

sick

مريض

the Nile

النيل

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

live

يعيش

lived

learn

يتعلم

learnt / learned

work

يعمل

worked

send

يرسل

sent

buy

يشترى

bought

## Language Functions

• نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنحدد مكان شيء ما.

- The kitchen is **next to** the living room.
- The cave is **in** the rock.
- My house is **between** the tall house and the tree.

## Prepositions of place

• لاحظ الفرق بين (on) و (above) حيث (on) تعني ان الشيء فوق شيء آخر ويكون ملاصق له ولكن (above) تعني ان شيء يكون اعلى من شيء ولا يكون ملاصق له.

## Study the following

- |                                                 |                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 We buy food at the supermarket                | - نشترى الطعام من السوبر ماركت .      |
| 2 We go to hospital when we are sick.           | - نذهب إلى المستشفى عندما نمرض .      |
| 3 We learn there at school                      | - نتعلم في المدرسة .                  |
| 4 We send letters at the post office            | - نرسل خطابات في مكتب البريد .        |
| 5 My mom and dad work in an office              | - أبي وأمي يعملان في مكتب البريد .    |
| 6 We buy clothes and shoes at the shopping mall | - نشترى ملابس وأحذية من مركز التسوق . |

اقرأ واستمع. وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name's Zain. I live in a village **next to** the Nile. I live in a house with my family.

Our house isn't the biggest house in the village. It's **between** a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.



- Which house does Zain live in?

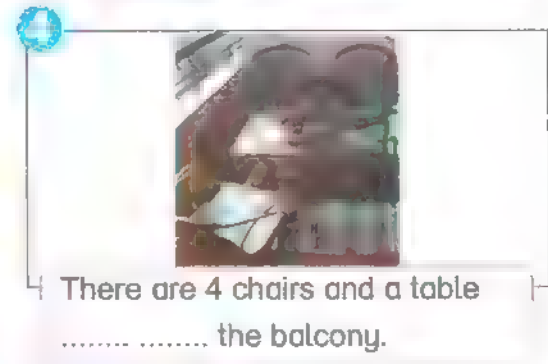
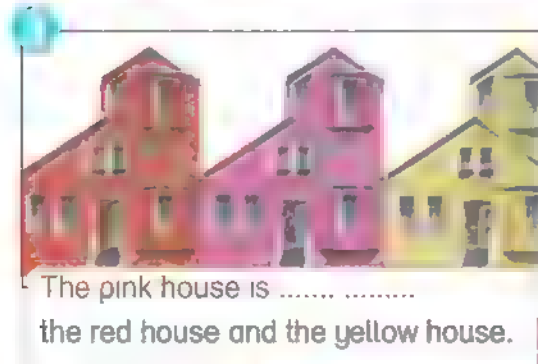




## Where do you live?

### 2 Look and complete the sentences:

انظر واكمل الجمل



### 3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل

- where we buy food
- where we send letters
- where I learn
- where I buy clothes and shoes
- where my mom and dad work
- where we go when we are sick

- a. office
- supermarket
- shopping mall
- school
- hospital
- post office

Help your child read and match.

ساعد طفلك يقرأ ويوصل.

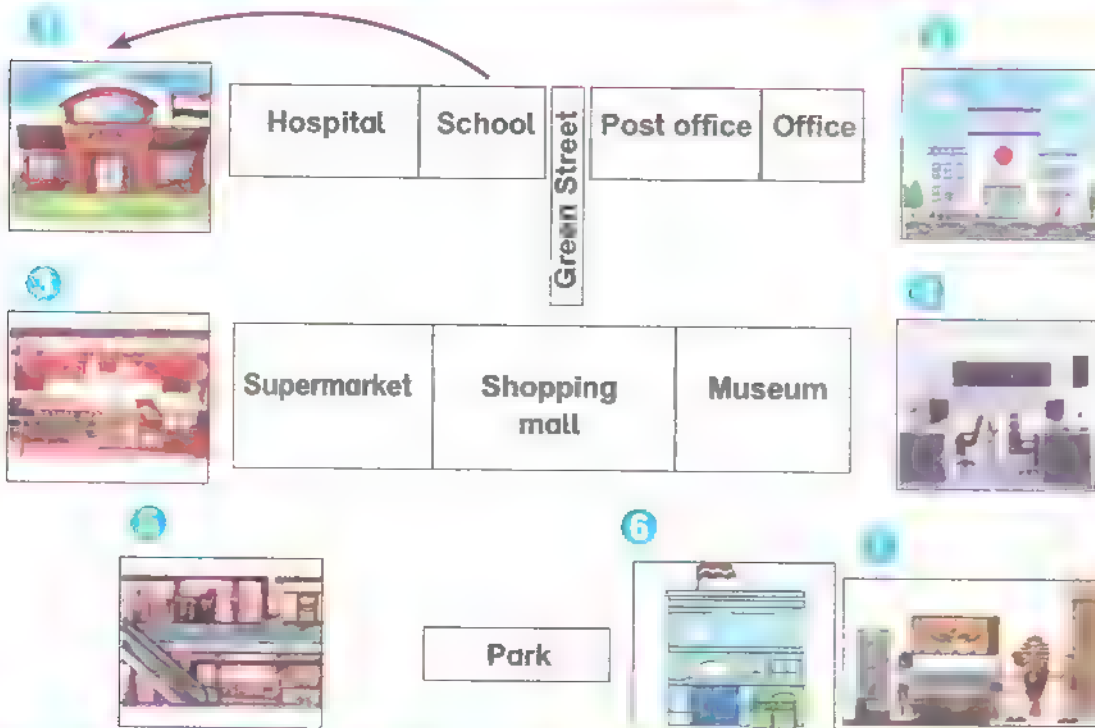




4

Look and connect.

انظر وصل (كما بالمثل):



5

Look and write.

أين هو المكان؟ انظر إلى الخريطة وكون جمل (اختر حرف الجر المناسب لعمل الجمل):

1- hospital / school

The hospital is next to the school.

2- shopping mall / supermarket / museum

The shopping mall is ..... the supermarket . . . . .

3- Green Street / school / post office

4- the park / the shopping mall

Help your child make sentences with prepositions.

ساعد طفلك أن يكون جمل باستخدام حروف الجر.





# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة



1. There are lots of ..... places near my house.

- ☐ a old                      ☐ b big                      ☐ c public                      ☐ d wide

2. The ..... is behind my house.

- ☐ a hospital                      ☐ b school                      ☐ c supermarket                      ☐ d post office

3. Next to the supermarket, there's a .....

- ☐ a school                      ☐ b shopping mall                      ☐ c park                      ☐ d hospital

4. There's a shopping mall ..... the post office and the park.

- ☐ a next                      ☐ b between                      ☐ c near                      ☐ d behind

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There's a cat ..... the chair.

- ☐ a between                      ☐ b next                      ☐ c on                      ☐ d of

2. The book is ..... the door, I can't see it.

- ☐ a next                      ☐ b in front                      ☐ c behind                      ☐ d in

3. My sister is sick. She's going to the .....

- ☐ a hospital                      ☐ b museum                      ☐ c school                      ☐ d shopping mall

4. I buy clothes and shoes at the .....

- ☐ a office                      ☐ b shopping mall                      ☐ c hospital                      ☐ d school

5. A: ..... is the hospital?

B: It's behind the park.

- ☐ a When                      ☐ b Where                      ☐ c Which                      ☐ d Why

6. We send letters at the .....

- ☐ a school                      ☐ b hospital                      ☐ c station                      ☐ d post office





### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

front - between - supermarket - next - live

My name is Hala. I ① ..... in Alexandria. There is a ② ..... in my street. I buy chips from it. It's ③ ..... the post office and the school. There are trees in ④ ..... of it.

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The tent is next ..... (for) the park.
2. The cat is ..... (on) front of the box.
3. The supermarket is between the hospital ..... (so) the school.
4. There's a plant ..... (between) the couch.

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

the park is next to the school

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاها عنه آخر الوحدة

rooms - garden



# Lesson

## Part 1

# 3

# Giving directions



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



مكتب



محل / متجر store



سوبر ماركت



مدرسة school

## My town مدينتي



بنك



مستشفى hospital



مركز تسوق shopping mall



حديقة عامة park



محطة station

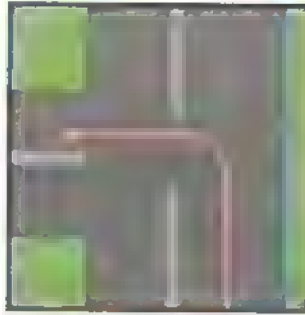


Help your child learn about places in the town.

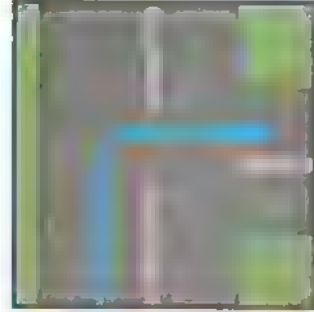
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن أماكن في المدينة.



استمع إلى المفردات:



Turn left  
استدر يساراً



Turn right  
استدر يميناً



Go straight\* ahead  
سر بشكل مستقيم

## Giving Directions

اعطاء  
الاتجاهات



Take the second right  
خذ ثانی یمن



Take the second left  
خذ ثانی یسار



It's on the corner  
إنها فی ركن / ناصية الشارع

## Other words

## كلمات أخرى



Excuse me.

اعذرني.

Thank you.

اشكرك.

near

قريب / بالقرب من

on the other side

على الجانب الآخر

by car

بالسيارة

corner

ركن / ناصية

See you soon!

اراك قريباً!

on the right

على اليمين

on the left

على اليسار

Excuse me, where's the + (المكان)?

وللإجابة نستخدم جمل لاعطاء الاتجاهات:

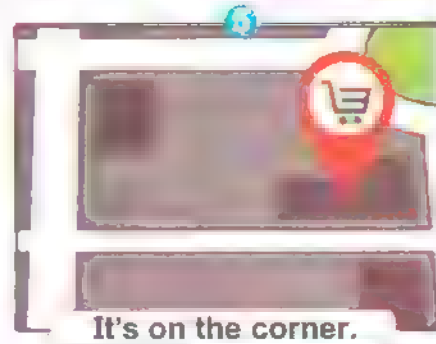
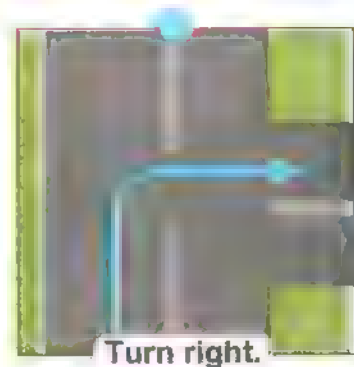
Go straight ahead.	Turn right / left.
Take the second right / left.	It's on the corner.
It's on the right / left.	

للسؤال عن المكان نستخدم

- Excuse me, where's the supermarket?
- Go straight ahead. Turn left. The supermarket is on the right.

### 1 Read and explain to the directions:

اقرأ واستمع إلى الاتجاهات:



### 2 Read and put the directions in the correct order:

اقرأ وضع الاتجاهات في الترتيب الصحيح:

Take the second left.

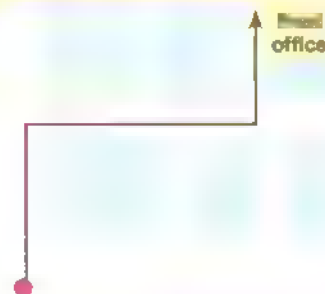
☐ Thank you!

1 Excuse me, where's the post office?

☐ Turn right.

☐ Go straight ahead.

☐ It's on the corner.



Help your child order the directions.

ساعد طفلك في ترتيب الاتجاهات.

the directions. Does Fareeda live in house A, B or C?

ستزور دينا صديقتها فريدة. اقرأ واتبع الاتجاهات. هل فريدة تعيش في منزل (A, B أو C)؟

استمع إلى النص:

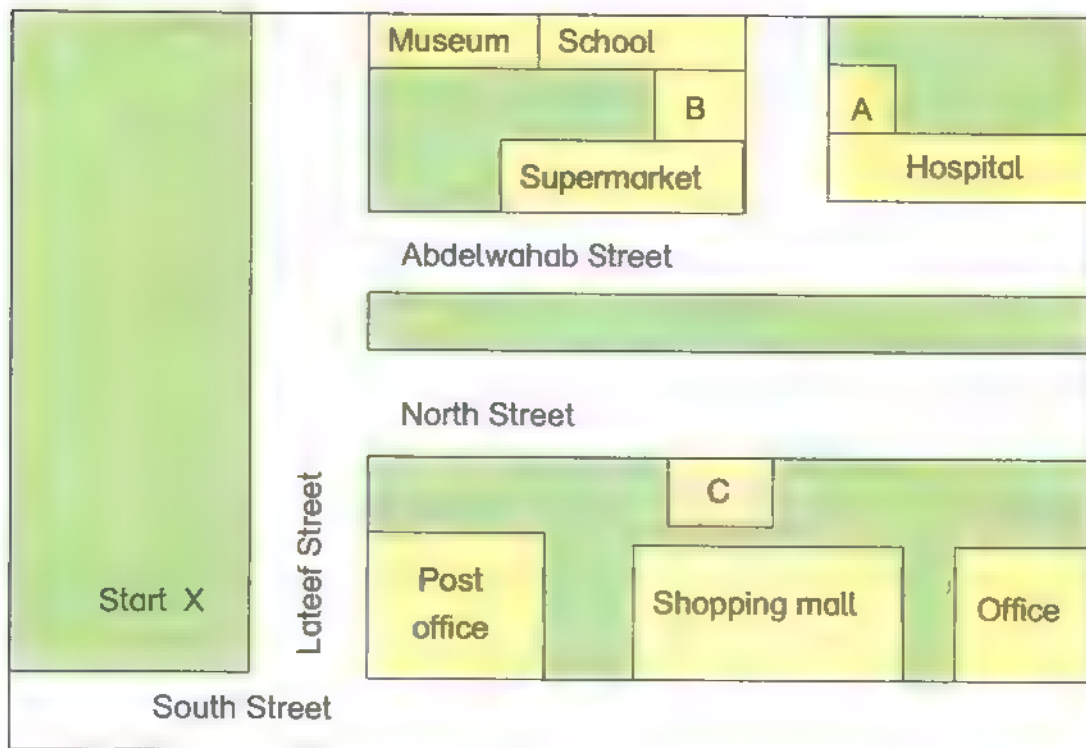


Hi Dina!

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some directions. From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Take the second right to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight ahead. Turn left at the supermarket. My house is between the supermarket and the school.

See you soon!

Fareeda



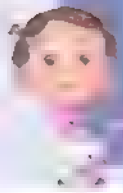
- Fareeda lives in house .....

Help your child read and find Fareeda's house.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويجد منزل فريدة.







# Activities



**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Hany lives in a village next to the .....

☐ a sea

☐ b Nile

☐ c desert

☐ d city

2. Samir is Hany's .....

☐ a uncle

☐ b father

☐ c brother

☐ d cousin

3. Hany's house is the ..... house in the village.

☐ a biggest

☐ b smallest

☐ c longest

☐ d shortest

4. There are tall trees ..... Hany's house.

☐ a next to

☐ b under

☐ c on

☐ d behind



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The hospital is ..... the corner.

☐ a of

☐ b on

☐ c between

☐ d under

2. Go ..... ahead.

☐ a street

☐ b stand

☐ c star

☐ d straight

3. A: Excuse me, ..... is the supermarket?

B: It's on the left.

☐ a where

☐ b what

☐ c how

☐ d why

4. The post office is ..... the left.

☐ a in

☐ b of

☐ c on

☐ d for

5. .... right. It's next to the bank.

☐ a Burn

☐ b Turn

☐ c Help

☐ d Take



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**between - straight - corner - took - right**

Yesterday, I visited my friend's new house. My friend gave me the directions. It's near my house. I went ❶ ..... ahead. Then, I ❷ ..... the second right to Ahmed Helmy Street. I turned ❸ ..... at the supermarket. Her house is ❹ ..... the school and the hospital.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Dina. I live in a big town. There are many places in my town. My school is near my house. I walk to school every morning. There's a park next to my school. I often play football in the park with my friends. There's a supermarket near my house. I can buy food from it. My dad works in an office. He goes there by car. There's a shopping mall next to the office.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is mainly about Dina's .....

- ☐ a supermarket      ☐ b office      ☐ c room      ☐ d town

2. The office is next to the .....

- ☐ a park      ☐ b hospital      ☐ c shopping mall      ☐ d post office

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. How does Dina go to school?

.....

4. Where does Dina play football?

.....

#### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. where is your school

.....

2. fareeda lives in a house

.....



# Lesson Part 2

## LIVING ON A BOAT Pronunciation

استمع إلى المقردات:



summer  
الصيف



tourist boats  
قوارب سياحية



the Nile  
النيل

### Other words

### كلمات أخرى



English

اللغة الإنجليزية

from all over the world

من جميع أنحاء العالم

Chinese

اللغة الصينية

one day

ذات يوم

interesting places

اماكن شيقة

on a boat

على قارب

suddenly

فجأة

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

save ينقذ  
decide يقرر  
smile يتسم  
shout يصيح  
call ينادي

saved  
decided  
smiled  
shouted  
called

meet يقابل  
swim يعوم  
fall يسقط  
know يعرف  
go يذهب

met  
swam  
fell  
knew  
went



اقرأ واستمع. كيف ساعد والد شريف الطفل الصغير؟

استمع إلى النص:



My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile.

He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into the river! The child shouted "Please help me!"

Sherif called his dad. Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child! The child smiled and said. "Thank you so much!"

Sherif was very happy, but he also decided to learn to swim.



Read again and write T (True) or F (False):

اقرأ مرة أخرى وضع صح أو خطأ:

False

- ① Sherif lives in a city in the summer.
- ② Sherif can speak English and Chinese.
- ③ The small child fell into the river.
- ④ Sherif jumped into the river.



Where do you live?

# Pronunciation

**لاحظ!**

امس رقبتهك باصابعك وانطق كلمة (fish) هل تحركت احيالك الصوتية؟

انطق كلمة (van) بما تشعر؟

تنقسم الاصوات الساكنة في اللغة الانجليزية الى **voiced** وهي الاصوات التي تهتز فيها الاحبال

الصوتية عند نطقها مثل، (b/d/g/j/l/m/n/r/v/w/y/z/th: this)



وهناك اصوات **voiceless** وهي التي لا تهتز الاحبال الصوتية عند نطقها

مثل، (ch/f/k/p/s/sh/t/th: thin)

استمع وقل

استمع إلى المفردات:



an مروحة



ace وجه



living room  
حجرة معيشة



ish  
سمكة



van شاحنة



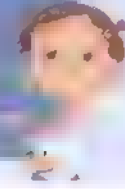
oot قدم



vegetables خضراوات



# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I like riding boats in the .....

- a fall                      b spring                      c summer                      d winter

2. My father works on a .....

- a car                      b truck                      c boat                      d bus

3. I can see interesting ..... from the boat.

- a places                      b things                      c animals                      d fish

4. My father speaks English and Chinese with the .....

- a friends                      b family                      c tourists                      d children

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

speaks - Chinese - meets - tourists - travels

My uncle works on a tourist boat. He likes to travel a lot. He ..... to China. He can speak ..... . He ..... people from all over the world. He meets a lot of ..... and speaks English with them.

## 3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Go ..... (**street**) ahead.
- ..... (**Turning**) left at the supermarket.
- The office is ..... (**for**) the corner.
- Samy can ..... (**speaking**) English.

## 4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إيشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

tourist boat - summer

.....

.....

.....





# Lexicon 4&5

## Writing Project

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Hurghada\* Beach  
شاطئ الغردقة

Hurghada  
مدينة الغردقة



bazaar  
سوق شرقي (بازار)



منطقة سهل حشيش



الصحراء الكبرى



Red Sea  
البحر الأحمر

### Other words

in the east of  
interesting  
tourist  
safaris

في شرق  
شيق  
سائح  
رحلات السفاري

photo  
map  
diagram

صورة فوتوغرافية  
خريطة  
رسم بياني

### Language Function

### وظائف لغوية

نتعلم في هذا الدرس كيف تكتب عن المكان الذي تعيش فيه.

Hi, I'm ( اسم ). I live in a city / village called (اسم مدينتك / قريتك). It is in (south / east of) (north / west of) (مكان المدينة).

About (عدد الناس) people live here. There is a (شيء يميز المكان). There are lots of (أشياء تميز المكان). We don't have ..... but we have .....

Hi, I'm Hamza. I live in a city called Siwa. It is in west of Egypt. About 35 thousand people live here. There are lots of palm trees here. We don't have skyscrapers, but we have nice houses.



## Study the following

- 1 I live in a city called Hurghada. اعيش في مدينة تسمى الغردقة .
- 2 Hurghada is in the east of Egypt. تقع الغردقة في شرق مصر .
- 3 It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. - إنها مدينة كبيرة ويعيش بها حوالي ١٩٠,٠٠٠ شخص .
- 4 There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. - يوجد بها الصحراء الكبرى حيث يذهب كثير من السائحين في رحلات السفاري .
- 5 Sahl Hasheesh has beautiful houses and interesting bazaars. - يوجد في سهل حشيش منازل جميلة وبازارات رائعة .

1

اقرأ مقال مريم عن الغردقة :

## Hurghada - My town

استمع إلى النص :



Mariam

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there's a **beach** and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the **Sahara Desert** where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have **Sahl Hasheesh** in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting **bazaars**.

Cairo

Hurghada





Hurghada beach



Sahl Hasheesh, Egypt



Sahara Desert

2 Read again and complete the table:

اقرأ مرة أخرى واكمل الجدول:

City	Hurghada
Where is it?	
How many people live there?	
Interesting things in Hurghada	



Read the text and write the items she uses.

كيف جعلت مريم النص الخاص بها شيقاً؟ ضع علامة (✓) على ما تم استخدامه.

• a photo of her



• a map

• drawings

• a diagram

• photos

• interesting facts





Think & Write: Write about your city or village. Draw a map of it.

فكر في قريتك أو مدينتك، قم بعمل بحث واكمل الجدول:

City / Village	
Where is it?	
How many people live there?	
Interesting things in my city/ village	



Read and Listen

اقرأ و اجب:

استمع إلى النص:

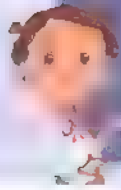


### The people who help us: the supermarket worker



This is Mona. She works at the \_\_\_\_\_ near my house. My family and I see her \_\_\_\_\_ when we buy food. Mona checks the food is fresh. She \_\_\_\_\_ us when we can't find something. She is very \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.





# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Mona works at a .....

☐ a school

☐ b supermarket

☐ c hospital

☐ d station

2. We can see Mona every ..... when we buy food.

☐ a month

☐ b week

☐ c day

☐ d year

3. Mona checks the food is .....

☐ a delicious

☐ b bad

☐ c fresh

☐ d healthy

4. Mona is a/an ..... girl.

☐ a unhealthy

☐ b kind

☐ c unkind

☐ d useful

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I live in a city ..... Hurghada.

☐ a called

☐ b calls

☐ c calling

☐ d call

2. A: ..... lives in Hurghada?

B: My friend Mariam.

☐ a When

☐ b Who

☐ c Where

☐ d Why

3. We can buy beautiful things at the .....

☐ a bazaars

☐ b tourists

☐ c photos

☐ d gardens

4. Tourists can go on ..... in the Sahara Desert.

☐ a sleeping

☐ b safaris

☐ c swimming

☐ d diving



**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**bazaars - tourists - sea - safaris - interesting**

I live in Giza. There are a lot of ❶ ..... places you can visit.  
Many ❷ ..... visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx. There are many  
❸ ..... in Giza. Tourists can go on ❹ ..... in Giza.

**4 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

hurghada is a big city

**5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

**Hurghada**

**east - the Sahara Desert**



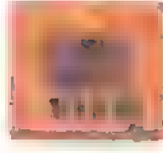
# Review



## Inside the house داخل المنزل



room  
حجرة



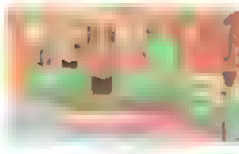
balcony  
بلكونة



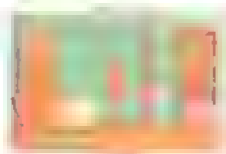
bedroom  
حجرة نوم



living room  
حجرة المعيشة



kitchen  
مطبخ



bathroom  
حمام



dining room  
حجرة الطعام

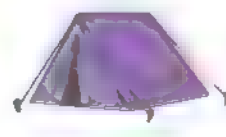
## Different houses المنازل المختلفة



house  
منزل



apartment  
شقة



tent  
خيمة



houseboat  
قارب للسكن

## Public places اماكن عامة



post office مكتب البريد



school مدرسة



office مكتب



supermarket سوبر ماركت



hospital مستشفى



shopping mall مركز للتسوق



## Giving Directions اعطاء الاتجاهات



Go straight ahead  
سير بشكل مستقيم



Turn left  
استدر يساراً



Turn right  
استدر يميناً



Take the second right  
خذ ثاني يمين



It's on the corner  
إنها في ركن الشارع



Take the second left  
خذ ثاني يسار

### Language Functions

Excuse me, where's the + (المكان)?

وللإجابة نستخدم جمل لاعطاء الاتجاهات:

Go straight ahead.	Turn right / left.
Take the second right / left.	It's on the corner.
It's on the right / left.	

السؤال  
عن المكان  
نستخدم

- Excuse me, where's the post office?
- Go straight ahead. Turn right. The post office is on the corner.

● نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنحدد مكان شيء ما.

- The kitchen is **next to** the living room.
- The cave is **in** the rock.
- My house is **between** the tall house and the tree.

Prepositions  
of place  
حروف الجر  
الخاصة بالمكان



## الصفات التي تصف الأشياء

- لنطق كلمة (whole) حرف (w) لا ينطق أي (silent).
- لنطق كلمة (dinner) انطق حرف (i) الأول ينطق مثل (i) كما في كلمة (kite).
- لنطق كلمة (bathroom) حرفي (th) ينطقان مثل (ث) في اللغة العربية.
- في نطق كلمة (couch) المقطع الصوتي (ou) ينطق كما في كلمة (out).
- لنطق كلمة (more) المقطع الصوتي (all) ينطق مثل نطق كلمة (fall) حيث حرف (a) ينطق مثل حرف (o).
- لا تنطق حرفي (gh) في كلمة (straight).
- لنطق كلمة (Hurghada) حرفي (gh) ينطقان مثل (ج) في اللغة العربية.





Write a paragraph of  
**EIGHTEEN (18) words.**

## Answers to Paragraphs

- 1** My house has a lot of rooms. My favorite room is the bedroom. I sleep in it. I read stories there. I like my house very much.

- 2** I live in a big house. It has a lot of rooms. I love it because it's big. I can play outside my house. My house has a beautiful garden. I watch TV in the living room.

- 3** My dad works on a tourist boat. He travels up and down the Nile. He likes the summer. He sees many interesting places. He speaks English, too.

- 4** Hurghada is in the east of Egypt. You can visit the Hurghada beach. About 190,000 people live there. The Sahara Desert there is very interesting. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert.

## Activity - Unit 4

- 5** I live in a big town. It's clean and quiet. There are a lot of interesting places. My school is near my house. There's a supermarket next to my school. I can buy food from it.



# Al-Azhar Exercises

الاسئلة الخاصة بالارهر الشريف

## A- Listening

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:



1. Ahmed lives in a ..... village. (small - big - fat)
2. Ahmed's school is next to the ..... (park - farm - hospital)
3. There's a shopping mall on the ..... (left - right - corner)

## B- Language Functions

### 2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل:

front - house - outside - live

- A : Where do your grandparents ..... ?  
B : They live in a .....  
A : Is there a garden in ..... of the house?  
B : Yes, I can play ..... with my brother.

## C- Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hend. I'm in grade four. I live in a big house with my family. We have three bedrooms and two bathrooms. My mum cooks food in the kitchen. I watch TV in the living room. My favorite room is my bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father on the farm. He grows tomatoes and onions for us.

#### A: Answer the following questions:

1. What grade is Hend in? .....
2. Where does Hend live? .....



Where do you live?

**B: Choose the correct answer:**

- Hend likes to do her homework in the ..... (bathroom - kitchen - bedroom)
- Hend's father grows ..... and onions. (mangoes - tomatoes - potatoes)
- Hend's house has three ..... (bedrooms - bathrooms - kitchens)

### D- Vocabulary and Structures

**4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- Sherif ..... English and Chinese.  
☐ a travels                      ☐ b meets                      ☐ c speaks
- The office is in ..... of the school.  
☐ a next                          ☐ b front                      ☐ c above
- Take the second .....  
☐ a right                      ☐ b write                      ☐ c light
- It's next ..... the post office.  
☐ a on                          ☐ b to                          ☐ c too
- Hurghada is in the ..... of Egypt.  
☐ a left                          ☐ b corner                      ☐ c east

### E- Writing

**5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:**

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- does - do - What - she? .....
- works - at - supermarket - She - the. ....
- people - live - in a village - there? .....
- There is - next to - is - the school. ....
- live - grandparents - in - a tent - in. ....

# Activities

Unit 4



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Nada loves her .....

☐ a farm

☐ b town

☐ c room

☐ d park

2. Nada's town is .....

☐ a quiet

☐ b noisy

☐ c small

☐ d dirty

3. Nada's town has .....

☐ a animals

☐ b schools

☐ c planes

☐ d mice

4. Nada's town is a ..... place to live in.

☐ a good

☐ b bad

☐ c scary

☐ d long

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I take a shower in the .....

☐ a kitchen

☐ b living room

☐ c bathroom

☐ d balcony

2. The hospital is ..... to the post office.

☐ a on

☐ b behind

☐ c in front

☐ d next

3. People in the desert live in a .....

☐ a boat

☐ b tent

☐ c balcony

☐ d ship

4. A: ..... is the bank? B: It's next to the hospital.

☐ a Where

☐ b What

☐ c When

☐ d Why

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

teacher - next - like - English - mall

I live in a small town. My school is ① ..... to a big park. My father is

a ② ..... . He is very kind. He teaches ③ ..... . Students

④ ..... him very much.





## Where do you live?

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

My friend, Mariam lives in Hurghada. It's a beautiful city in the east of Egypt. In Hurghada there's a beach and there are lots of cool stores and restaurants. There is also the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. Sahl Hasheesh is in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The main idea of the passage is about .....  
☐ a Cairo      ☐ b Hurghada      ☐ c Luxor      ☐ d Alexandria
- Sahl Hasheesh is in the ..... of Hurghada.  
☐ a north      ☐ b south      ☐ c east      ☐ d west

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Where does Mariam live?

4. What does Sahl Hasheesh have?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- There's a hospital ..... (on) the park and the school.
- A: ..... (When) is the shopping mall? B: Turn right
- I live in a city ..... (calls) Siwa.
- Which house does Zain ..... (living)?

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

I can speak english .....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

clean - supermarket



Theme

2

5

## Myself and others

### Where do you work?

أين تعمل؟



#### Objectives of the Unit

#### أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, and write about workers in my community.  
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب عن العاملين في مجتمعه.
2. Learn about electricity.  
- يتعلم الطالب عن الكهرباء.
3. Practice using this, that, these, those.  
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام (هذا / هذه - ذلك / تلك - هؤلاء - أولئك).
4. Practice word stress on two-syllable words.  
- يتدرب الطالب على نطق المقاطع المشددة في الكلمات المكونة من مقطعين صوتيين.
5. Think and write about the pros and cons of different jobs.  
- يفكر الطالب ويكتب عن مميزات وعيوب الوظائف المختلفة.
6. Make a report about workers in my community.  
- يقوم الطالب بعمل تقرير عن العاملين في مجتمعه.

# Lesson 5

## Listening

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



كهربائي



plumber\*  
سباك



garbage\* collector  
عامل نظافة



il carrier  
ساعي بريد



mechanic\*  
ميكانيكي



bus driver  
سائق اتوبيس

### Other words

### الكلمات الأخرى

safe

آمن

pipe

ماسورة

wait

ينتظر

messy

فوضوي

garbage = trash

قمامة

faucet\*

حنفية

parcel

طرْد / رزمة

### Conjugation of verbs

### صيغ الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

deliver يُوصل  
fix يصلح  
connect يربط / يُوصل  
drip ينقط  
wait ينتظر  
collect يجمع  
hope يأمل

delivered  
fixed  
connected  
dripped  
waited  
collected  
hoped

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

forget ينسى  
take out يُخرج / يُزيل  
drive يقود  
put out يضع شيء في مكانه

forgot  
took out  
drove  
put out

Help your child learn about different jobs.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الوظائف المختلفة.



## Study the following

نتعلم فى هذا الدرس عن الوظائف المختلفة وما تقدمه كل وظيفة.

الوظيفة	الوصف	
electrician كهربائى	- loves making things work. يحب أن يجعل الأشياء تعمل.	
plumber سباك	- connects your home to water. يوصل منزلك بالماء. - fixes pipes and faucets. يصلح المواسير والحنفيات.	
garbage collector عامل النظافة	- takes away all the garbage. يأخذ كل القمامة - works hard to collect the trash. يعمل بجهد لجمع القمامة.	
mail carrier ساعي البريد	- delivers your letters and parcels. يوصل خطاباتك وطرودك.	
mechanic ميكانيكى	- fixes cars or buses. يصلح السيارات أو الاتوبيسات.	
bus driver سائق الاتوبيس	- drives you to many different places. يوصلك لأماكن مختلفة. - helps you get to school on time. يساعدك أن تصل إلى المدرسة فى الوقت المحدد.	

تعلم أيضاً الإجابة عن أسئلة تخص الوظائف.

1. Which job is the most interesting? Why?

- I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. Because you drive to many different places and help lots of people.

2. Which job is the most difficult? Why?

- I think being an electrician is the most difficult job. Because you can get an electric shock.



## Where do you work?

### 1 Listen and read. What is Dad's job?

استمع واقرأ.

**Zeinab** : Dad, do you like your job?

استمع إلى النص:



**Dad** : Yes, I love being a plumber. Sometimes it's **wet**<sup>(1)</sup> and **messy**<sup>(2)</sup> because I have to fix pipes and faucets.

**Zeinab** : Did you want to do a different job when you were young?

**Dad** : Yes, I wanted to be a bus driver or a mechanic.

**Zeinab** : So what happened?

#### «Arabic Meaning»

١- رطب - مبلل

٢- فوضوي

٣- القيادة

**Dad** : Well, I don't really like **driving**<sup>(3)</sup>! I was much better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars!

**Zeinab** : What about you, Youssef? Do you like being an electrician?

**Youssef** : Yes, I love making things work!

**Dad** : Oh look, here's the mail carrier! I hope he has my parcel...

**Zeinab** : And there's the garbage collector! Oh, I forgot to take out the trash! Wait please ...

### 2 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ مرة أخرى وأكمل الجمل بالكلمات من التمرين رقم (١).

1. When he was young, Dad wanted to be a .....  
or a .....
2. Youssef is an .....
3. The ..... arrives as they are talking.
4. Zeinab forgot to put the trash out for the .....
5. If you have a problem with pipes or faucets in your house, you need a .....

Help your child listen and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويجيب عن الأسئلة.



### 3 Listen and say. Then write:

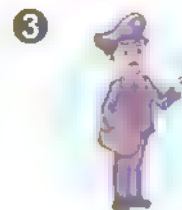
استمع وقل ثم اكتب،

bus driver - electrician - garbage collector

mail carrier - mechanic - plumber



electrician



### 4 Think and say.

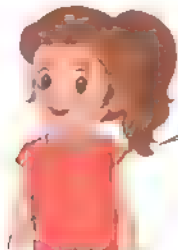
ماذا تعتقد؟

1. Which job is the most interesting? Why?

أى عمل هو الأكثر إثارة؟ لماذا؟

2. Which job is the most difficult? Why?

أى وظيفة هي الأصعب؟ لماذا؟



I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.

Did you know?

هل تعلم؟

Cairo produces around 20,000,000 tons of garbage every year. Garbage collectors work hard to collect it all.

هل تعلم أن القاهرة تنتج ٢٠,٠٠٠,٠٠٠ طن من القمامة سنوياً. يعمل عمال النظافة بجهد لجمع هذه القمامة.







# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع الجزء الثاني

(2023)

1. The family were ..... yesterday.

- ☐ a sad                      ☐ b funny                      ☐ c busy                      ☐ d asleep

2. Mom fixed the ..... in the kitchen.

- ☐ a pipes                      ☐ b cars                      ☐ c faucets                      ☐ d buses

3. Dad was ..... his car.

- ☐ a arriving                      ☐ b fixing                      ☐ c selling                      ☐ d buying

4. Fatma gave the ..... to the mail carrier.

- ☐ a parcel                      ☐ b faucet                      ☐ c trash                      ☐ d pipe

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A garbage collector ..... the trash.

- ☐ a makes                      ☐ b builds                      ☐ c draws                      ☐ d collects

2. We need a mechanic to ..... our car.

(2023)

- ☐ a deliver                      ☐ b help                      ☐ c fix                      ☐ d play

3. A mail carrier delivers your .....

- ☐ a parcels                      ☐ b faucets                      ☐ c electricity                      ☐ d water

4. A / An ..... drives the bus.

- ☐ a electrician                      ☐ b farmer                      ☐ c plumber                      ☐ d bus driver

5. The ..... connects your home to water.

- ☐ a bus driver                      ☐ b electrician                      ☐ c plumber                      ☐ d doctor

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

loves - pipes - useful - trash - delivers

(2023)

There are many different jobs in our country. These jobs are very ① .....  
Many people help us in our homes. For example, an electrician ② ..... making  
things work. A plumber fixes the ③ ..... A garbage collector collects the

4



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة.

Many people around us work hard. We help each other. A plumber connects the pipes and faucets. A garbage collector takes away the garbage, so you can keep your house nice and clean. A bus driver drives to many different places and helps people. A mail carrier delivers letters. He is outside all day. His bag is very heavy. All of them work hard. They are very important for us and help us every day in our life.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .. helps us to clean our houses.

- ☐ a plumber      ☐ b garbage collector      ☐ c vet      ☐ d nurse

2. A plumber connects the ..... and faucets.

- ☐ a cars      ☐ b pipes      ☐ c lights      ☐ d letters

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does the bus driver do? .....

4. What does the garbage collector take away? .....

#### 5 Punctuate the following: صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. do you like your job .....

2. i love making things work .....

#### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

pipes - connects

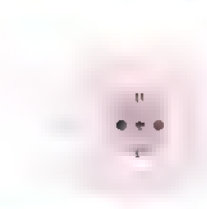
مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

# Lesson 9

## IS IT NEAR OR FAR? Electricity

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



مقبس (بريزة)



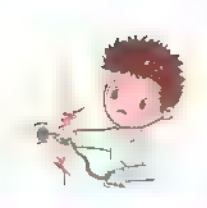
كهرباء



كهربائي (Electrician)



فيشة



صدمة كهربائية



برق



عاصفة



ضوء



parcel

طرد



tools أدوات



trash قمامة

### Other words



safely

بأمان

save electricity

يوفر الكهرباء

flash

وميض

interviewer

محاوِر

never

أبدًا

near

قريب

repair shop

ورشة إصلاح السيارات

far

بعيد

How fast...?

كم سرعة...؟

close to

قريب من

speed

سرعة

huge amount

كمية ضخمة

wet hands

أيدي مبتلة

energy

طاقة

dry

جاف

Help your child learn about electricity.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الكهرباء.



## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

study يدرس - يتدرب

studied

become

يصبح

became

practice يتدرب / يمارس

practiced

burn

يحرق / يحترق

burnt

control

يتحكم

controlled

put

يضع

put

touch

يلمس

touched

get

يحصل على

got

### Grammar

Inf / Always + inf.

- Wash your hand. / Always wash your hands.

Don't + inf / Never + inf.

- Don't make noise. / Never make noise.

1

لاعطاء امر  
بفعل شيء  
ابدا الجملة  
بـ

لاعطاء امر  
بعدم فعل  
شيء نبدا  
بـ

● للإشارة إلى شيء مفرد قريب (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (this) بمعنى (هذا / هذه).

- This is the socket the electrician is fixing.



3

This, That,  
These,  
Those

● للإشارة إلى شيء مفرد بعيد (يعد أو لا يعد) نستخدم (that) بمعنى (ذلك / تلك).

- That's the water dripping from the faucet.



● للإشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) قريبة نستخدم (These) بمعنى (هؤلاء).

- These are the plumber's tools.



● للإشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) بعيدة نستخدم (Those) بمعنى (أولئك).

- Those are the mail carrier's parcels.





## Where do you work?

لاحظ

- عند اختيار This / That / These / Those نحدد هل الشيء مفرد أو جمع إذا كان مفرد نختار إما (This أو That) وإذا كان جمع نختار (These أو Those).
- ثانياً: نحدد إذا كان قريب أو بعيد . إذا كان قريب (near) نختار (This / These) والبعيد (far) نختار (That / Those).
- ويأتى مع this / that فعل مفرد (is / has).
- ويأتى مع these / those فعل جمع (are / have).

### Study the following

1. لا تلمس أى شيء كهربى ويديك مبتلة. **Don't touch anything electrical with wet hands.**
2. لا تضع أى شيء فى البرية. **Don't put anything in the desert.**
3. **Only use plugs.** استخدم الفيشة فقط.
4. **Always make sure your hands are dry before you touch anything electrical.** تأكد دائما أن يديك جافة قبل أن تلمس شيء كهربى.
5. **Electricity travels very fast.** الكهرباء تنقل بسرعة شديدة.
6. **Think that lightning is dangerous in an electrical storm.** يوجد كمية هائلة من الطاقة فى العاصفة الكهربائية.
7. **Electricity is very dangerous.** الكهرباء خطيرة جداً.
8. **Electricity can burn us.** الكهرباء يمكن أن تحرقنا.
9. **Electricity is something we can't control our bodies.** إذا تعرضنا لصدمة كهربية لا يمكننا التحكم فى أجسادنا.



### Look at the pictures and match the sentences with the correct picture.

انظر واقرأ وصل الجمل بالصور.

- 1 That mail carrier is delivering letters.
- 2 These mechanics work in the repair shop.
- 3 This bus is taking me to school.
- 4 Those drivers are driving the new buses.



a



b



c



d





## Complete the sentences:

أكمل الجمل:

That - These - This - Those

1. Can you see? ..... 's the mail carrier. (far)



2. .... is my aunt. Her name is Amira. She's a teacher. (near)



3. .... children are going to school. (near)



4. .... children are watching TV. (far)



## Change the sentences into plural:

حول الجمل إلى صيغة الجمع:

1. This is the faucet in my bathroom.

These are the faucets in our bathrooms.

2. That is the mechanic who fixed my car.

.....

3. This is the garbage collector who collects our trash.

.....

4. That is the plumber who came to our house.

.....



## Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ المقالة سريعا ثم اجب عن الاسئلة:

### Answer the questions:

1. Why is electricity dangerous?

.....

2. Is it easy to become an electrician?

.....

Help your child learn about workers in his community.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن العاملين في مجتمعه.







## Where do you work?

### Amira the electrician

This is Amira, she's an electrician. She studied and worked for three years before she became an electrician.

She knows how to work safely with electricity.

Amira: I know something interesting about electricity.

Did you know, electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light! In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm!

Interviewer : Is electricity dangerous?

Amira: Yes, very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us.

Interviewer : How can we use electricity safely?

Amira: Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.

استمع إلى النص:



## 5 Read the interview again. Answer the questions:

اقرأ المقابلة مرة أخرى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

1. How fast can electricity travel?

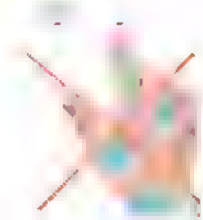
2. How can you use electricity safely at your home?



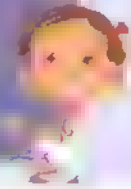
اقرأ وأكمل الجمل:

اقرأ وأكمل الجمل:

- Never touch anything electrical with..... hands.
- Always make sure your hands are ..... before you touch anything electrical.



# Activities



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Use only ..... into a socket.

- ☐ a lights      ☐ b bodies      ☐ c plugs      ☐ d computers

2. Don't touch anything electrical with ..... hands.

- ☐ a wet      ☐ b dry      ☐ c dirty      ☐ d clean

3. Those ..... are working in the repair shop.

- ☐ a mechanics      ☐ b builders      ☐ c mail carriers      ☐ d teachers

4. You should be careful because electricity is .....

- ☐ a safe      ☐ b dangerous      ☐ c nice      ☐ d kind

5. Amira studied electricity, she is a/an .....

- ☐ a plumber      ☐ b mechanic      ☐ c electrician      ☐ d driver

6. I love football and I ..... twice a week.

- ☐ a travel      ☐ b practice      ☐ c control      ☐ d burn

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**plugs - control - touch - use - socket**

Electricity is very dangerous. We should ① ..... electricity safely at home. We should never ② ..... anything electrical with wet hands. We never put anything into a ③ ....., only use ④ .....

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My brother Ziad wants to be an electrician. Electricity is very dangerous, so he will study and practice it for years. He always buys books about electricity. He learns a lot of information about electricity.

He learns that electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm.





## Unit 5 Where do you work?

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ziad wants to be a/an .....

☐ a plumber

☐ b electrician

☐ c farmer

☐ d mail carrier

2. We see a flash of lightning in a .....

☐ a storm

☐ b trash

☐ c parcel

☐ d socket

### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. ....

4. How fast can electricity travel? .....



### Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (That) mountains are very high.

2. .... (This) are the pipes in the bathroom.

3. .... (That) children are going to school.

4. That ..... (are) a plumber who comes to our house.

5. .... (These) apples are on the tree. I can't get them.

6. .... (Doesn't) touch anything electrical with wet hands.

7. The drivers ..... (is) driving the buses.

8. Look, ..... (this) bird is flying.

9. .... (That) children are watching TV.

10. .... (These) is the garbage collector who collects our trash.



### Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

is electricity dangerous

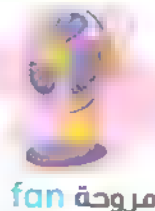
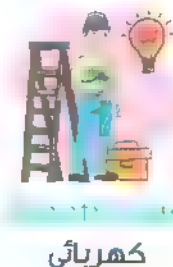
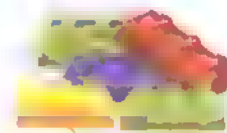


# Lesson 3

## Three cousins

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

**Present** مضارع

**Past** ماضٍ

open يفتح  
explain يشرح / يفسر  
call يتصل

opened  
explained  
called

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

**Present** مضارع

**Past** ماضٍ

get angry يغضب  
put يضع  
learn يتعلم

got angry  
put  
learned / learnt

### Other words

different

مختلف

curious

فضولي

on top of another

فوق الآخر

still

ما يزال

learn about

يتعلم عن

sometimes

أحيانًا

patient\*

صبور

adult

شخص راشد (بالغ)

Help your child learn new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة.



## Where do you work?

1

Look, listen, and say.

انظر واستمع وقل:



screwdriver



tape measure



blocks

2

Read and listen. Do you know anyone like Lara, Talia, or Amir?

اقرأ واستمع هل تعرف أشخاص مثل لارا وتاليا وأمير؟

استمع إلى النص:



Lara, Talia, and Amir are cousins, but they are all very different.

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She was very **curious**. She always carried a **screwdriver** and she opened old radios, cell phones, and **anything** that had electricity. Her favorite question was: How does it work? She learned about safety with electricity.



Lara

When Talia was a baby, she played with **blocks**. She put one block on top of another. When she was **older**, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a **tape measure** and a pencil.



Talia

Amir was **always** very patient and he liked helping people. Sometimes, big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry. He played, he helped, and he explained things all the time.



Amir

Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir are all adults, but they still call each other when they need some help.

3

Think, choose, and write. What do you think Lara, Talia

فكر واختر واكتب في رأيك ما هي وظيفة لارا وتاليا وأمير اليوم؟

an architect - an electrician - a teacher

1. Lara is

2. Talia is

3. Amir is





4

اقرأ (النص السابق) مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1. Who does Amir call when the fan doesn't work?
2. Who does Lara call when she wants to change something in her house?
3. Who does Talia call when she doesn't understand something in her English class?

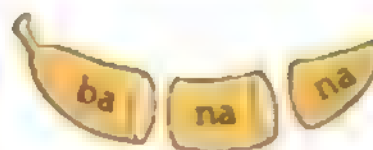
## Pronunciation & Math

### Syllables

### المقاطع الصوتية

تتكون الكلمات في اللغة الانجليزية من مقاطع صوتية وكل مقطع صوتي يحتوى على صوت متحرك كما يلي:

### Count the syllables.



- ١) كلمة **bin** تحتوي على مقطع صوتي واحد حيث بها صوت **short i**.
- ٢) كلمة **dentist** تحتوي على مقطعين صوتيين حيث بها صوتين متحركين **[e / i]**.

### لاحظ!

- ١ في اغلب الكلمات إذا جاءت الحروف المتحركة معا دون فاصل فهي بذلك تعد مقطع صوتي واحد. فمثلا كلمة **builder** بها حرفين متحركين متاليين **(u / i)** لكنهما لا يوجد بينهما فاصل إذا هما مقطع واحد.
- ٢ في كلمة **make** تنتهي الكلمة بحرف **e** لكنه هنا لا يعتبر صوت متحرك لأنه غير منطوق أصلاً.
- ٣ إذا جاءت **(e)** آخر الكلمة وكان قبلها حرف **(l)** فهنا تعد مقطع صوتي كما في كلمة **apple**.
- ٤ لاحظ صوت حرف **(y)** يعد مقطع من المقاطع الصوتية فمثلا كلمة **city** تحتوي على مقطعين صوتيين.

1

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يعد المقاطع الصوتية في كل كلمة مما يلي:

electrician

4

e-lec-tri-cian

plumber

teacher

2

teach-er

mechanic

collector

dentist

architect

doctor

Help your child learn how to count the syllables.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يعد المقاطع الصوتية.



- بعد ان تعلمنا أن الكلمات الانجليزية تُقسم إلى مقاطع صوتية نتعلم أن هناك مقطع يكون مشدد في الكلمة (أي أن صوت هذا المقطع يكون أكثر صوت بارز في الكلمة).
- وتختلف الشدة (٣) في اللغة العربية حيث تكون علي حرف في الكلمة أما في اللغة الانجليزية تكون على مقطع من المقاطع ويجب معرفة المقطع المشدد في اللغة الانجليزية لان ذلك ممكن يغير المعنى فمثلاً كلمة (pres-ent) تعنى هدية وذلك إذا كان التشديد على المقطع الأول. أما إذا كان التشديد على المقطع الثاني pres-ent يكون معناها يُقدم.
- ولعرفة المقطع المشدد في اللغة الانجليزية نقسم الكلمة إلى مقاطع صوتية ثم نسمع الكلمة ونحدد المقطع أو نبحث عن الكلمة في قاموس وسنرى علامة (•) فوق المقطع المشدد فمثلاً في كلمة (dentist) تقسم إلى (den-tist) نلاحظ أن التشديد على المقطع الأول.

dentist

- لاحظ الكلمات الآتية التشديد على المقطع الأول.

plumber / teacher / builder / driver / doctor / architect

- الكلمة الآتية التشديد على المقطع الثاني.

mechanic

- الكلمة الآتية التشديد على المقطع الثالث.

electrician



أي مقطع مشدد؟ استمع واختر:



dentist or dentist



ضع خط تحت المقطع المشدد في الكلمات،

plumber

teacher

collector

dentist

driver

doctor



استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي بها التشديد الصحيح،

1. plumber

plumber

4. mechanic

mechanic

2. teacher

teacher

5. driver

driver

3. collector

collector

6. doctor

doctor



# CLIL MATH

## Math: Division

عملية القسمة هي تقسيم مجموعة أشياء إلى أجزاء متساوية.

### Tip!

Division is separating into different groups.

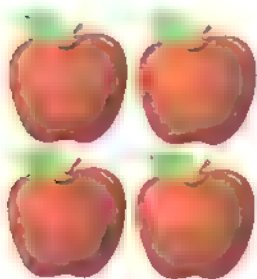
$15 \div 3 = 5$  Fifteen divided by three equals five.



عملية القسمة هي تقسيم العدد إلى مجموعات متساوية.

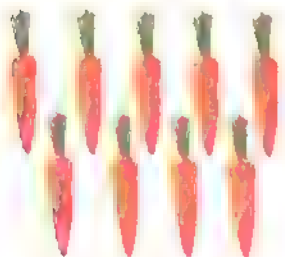
$$4 \div 2 = 2$$

لدينا هنا 4 تفاحات وولدين والمطلوب تقسيم التفاح على الولدين بالتساوي.



$$9 \div 3 = 3$$

في هذا المثال لدينا 9 جزرات وثلاث بنات ولعرفة كم جزرة لكل فتاة نقسم العدد الكبير (الجزر) على العدد الصغير (البنات).



### 1 Look and think. Write the missing numbers:

انظر وفكر. أكتب الأرقام الناقصة.

1 a  $100 \div \dots = 2$

$100 \div 2 = \dots$

2 a  $100 \div 25 = \dots$

$100 \div \dots = 25$

3 b  $100 \div \dots = 5$

$100 \div 5 = \dots$

### 2 Listen and check:

استمع وتأكد.

استمع للنص وتأكد من إجابتك في التمرين السابق.

### Tapescript

نص الاستماع

- 1 a one hundred divided by fifty equals two.  
b one hundred divided by two equals fifty.
- 2 one hundred divided by twenty-five equals four.  
b one hundred divided by four equals twenty-five.
- 3 one hundred divided by twenty equals five.  
b one hundred divided by five equals twenty.

### 3 Read and solve the problem:

اقرأ وحل المسألة.

There are two hundred children in Grade 4. Today they are going on a school trip.  
Each school bus carries 50 children.  
How many buses do they need? .....



### Find out



What is this symbol  $\div$  called? A Swiss mathematician called Johann Rahn used it first in 1659.

ماذا يسمى الرمز  $\div$ ? استخدمه عالم رياضيات سويسري يدعى يوهان ران لأول مرة عام 1659.

A mathematician \*

works with numbers and math problems.

يعمل عالم الرياضيات مع الأرقام والمسائل الحسابية.

# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Fatma, Farid and Amr are

☐ a friends

☐ b cousins

☐ c parents

☐ d babies

2. Farid wanted to be a/an

☐ a electrician

☐ b teacher

☐ c architect

☐ d plumber

3. Amr always carried

☐ a a radio

☐ b a screwdriver

☐ c blocks

☐ d a tape measure

4. Fatma wanted to be a/an

☐ a architect

☐ b teacher

☐ c mechanic

☐ d mail carrier

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The electrician uses ..... to open old radios.

☐ a blocks

☐ b tape measures

☐ c screwdrivers

☐ d pens

2. The ..... always carries a tape measure and a pencil.

☐ a teacher

☐ b architect

☐ c farmer

☐ d electrician

3. Lara is ..... , she always wants to know about something.

☐ a lazy

☐ b dangerous

☐ c curious

☐ d patient

4. Marawan is always ..... . He is never angry.

☐ a sad

☐ b bad

☐ c ugly

☐ d patient

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

explained - different - angry - teacher - helping

When I was a child, I always was patient. I liked ① ..... people. I was never ② ..... with my brothers or sisters. I played and helped my friends. I ③ ..... things all the time. Now I'm a ④ .....





4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

(2024)

My sister Mona is in Grade Four. She wants to be an architect. When Mona was three, she played with blocks. When she was older, she started making things. She made a house for her cat. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. My father and mother always help her.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about a/an .....

a job

b animal

c hospital

d office

2. Mona's ..... always help her.

a father

b mother

c parents

d cousins

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to?

4. Summarize the text in two sentences.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

where do you live

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

connects - sockets

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

connects - sockets



# Lessons 4 & 5 Writing Project

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



good  
جيد



لليء



cleaner  
عامل نظافة



aunt / عممة / خالة



mail carrier  
ساعي بريد

## Other words

class	حصة / درس	pros (good things)	مميزات
on the one hand	من جهة	cons (bad things)	عيوب
on the other hand	من الجهة الأخرى	America	أمريكا
point	نقطة	easy	سهل
fun	متعة	heavy	ثقيل
everyone	كل احد	weather	طقس
great	رائع	everybody	كل شخص
exercise	تدريب / تمرين	wake up	يستيقظ

## Language Functions

ندرس في هذا الدرس مميزات (pros) وعيوب (cons) وظيفة ساعي البريد:

مميزات Pros	عيوب Cons
<p>- Mail carriers get a lot of <u>exercise</u>.</p> <p>- يحصل ساعي البريد على الكثير من التدريب.</p>	<p>- The mail bag is very <u>heavy</u>.</p> <p>- حقيبة ساعي البريد ثقيلة جدًا.</p>
<p>- They <u>speak</u> to a lot of people.</p> <p>- يتحدثون إلى الكثير من الناس.</p>	<p>- Mail carriers <u>wake up</u> very early.</p> <p>- يستيقظ ساعي البريد مبكرًا جدًا.</p>







## Where do you work?



things about the job?:

فكر في وظيفة ساعي البريد ما مميزات وعيوب هذه الوظيفة؟



Read and complete the table

اقرأ وأكمل الجدول:



استمع إلى النص:

My name is Sherifa. In class this week, we're talking about the good and bad things about different jobs. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. I talked to her about her job and she told me some of the pros and cons.



Pros and cons of being a mail carrier.

What's it like to be a mail carrier?

There are some good and bad points about the job.

On one hand, mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise.



Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier. On the other hand there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very heavy.

Another bad thing is that they wake up very early. My aunt starts work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

Pros (Good things)	Cons (Bad things)
- Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.	It's not easy.

Help your child know the pros and cons of being a mail carrier. ساعد طفلك ان يعرف مميزات وعيوب ان يكون ساعي بريد.

## A report about people who help us تقرير عن ناس تساعدنا

3

Read the report

اقرأ التقرير:

استمع إلى النص:



**Workers who  
made our  
school**



The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights.

The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school. The garbage collectors take away our garbage.

The mechanics fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.





# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الإستماع نقرأ الكتاب



1. Sally lives in \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a Benha

☐ b Suez

☐ c Giza

☐ d Cairo

2. Sally's father wanted to be a/an \_\_\_\_\_ when he was young.

☐ a mechanic

☐ b teacher

☐ c electrician

☐ d bus driver

3. \_\_\_\_\_ is a teacher.

☐ a Sally

☐ b Sally's father

☐ c Sally's mother

☐ d Ali

4. Sally's father is better at fixing \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a fans

☐ b pipes

☐ c radios

☐ d plugs

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ connects pipes.

☐ a cleaner

☐ b mechanic

☐ c plumber

☐ d builder

2. The cleaners keep the school \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a dirty

☐ b clean

☐ c bad

☐ d ugly

3. The bus driver \_\_\_\_\_ children to school.

☐ a draws

☐ b fixes

☐ c uses

☐ d brings

4. Can you write about the pros and \_\_\_\_\_ of being a mail carrier?

☐ a cans

☐ b coats

☐ c coins

☐ d cons

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

shock - cons - other - foot - hand

Every job has good things and bad things. These are pros and ❶ \_\_\_\_\_.  
Being an electrician is very good. You can fix many things. On one ❷ \_\_\_\_\_  
you can get a lot of money. On the ❸ \_\_\_\_\_ hand, it can be dangerous. You  
can get an electric ❹ \_\_\_\_\_.



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ القطعة واحب عن الأسئلة:

There were many workers that made our school. The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights. The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school. The garbage collectors take away our garbage. The mechanics fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We need ..... to connect the pipes.

☐ a bus drivers

☐ b mechanics

☐ c plumbers

☐ d garbage collectors

2. Electricians connect ..... so that we can have lights.

☐ a pipes

☐ b electricity

☐ c buses

☐ d garbage

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Why are cleaners important?

4. What do mechanics do?

**5 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

the mechanic fixes cars and buses

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

walks - healthy

# Review



## Jobs الوظائف



electrician  
كهربائي



plumber  
سباك



garbage collector  
عامل نظافة



mail carrier  
ساعي بريد



mechanic  
ميكانيكي



bus driver  
سائق اتوبيس

## Electricity الكهرباء



electric shock  
صدمة كهربائية



socket  
مقبس (بريزة)



plug  
فيشة



tools  
ادوات



lightning  
برق



electricity  
كهرباء

## Three cousins أولاد العم الثلاثة



experiment  
يحرِب , يختبر



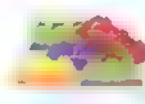
screwdriver  
مفك



architect  
مهندس معماري



tape measure  
شريط قياس



blocks  
لعبة المكعبات







cell phone  
تليفون محمول

Help your child review Unit 5.

ساعد طفلك يراجع الوحدة الخامسة.

on the one hand	من جهة	pros	مميزات
on the other hand	من الجهة الأخرى	cons	عيوب

### This, That, These, Those

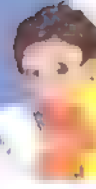
- للإشارة إلى شيء مفرد قريب نستخدم (this) بمعنى هذا / هذه.
- This is the screwdriver. 
- للإشارة إلى شيء مفرد بعيد نستخدم (that) بمعنى (ذلك / تلك).
- That's the faucet. 
- للإشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) قريبة نستخدم (These) بمعنى (هؤلاء).
- These are the plumber's tools. 
- للإشارة إلى أشياء (جمع) بعيدة نستخدم (Those) بمعنى (أولئك).
- Those are the mail carrier's parcels. 



### تذكر أن...

1. لنطق كلمة (electrician) انطق الحروف (cian) مثل نطق ش في اللغة العربية
2. لنطق كلمة (garbage) انطق حرف (g) الأول كما يطق في كلمة (goat) و حرف (g) الثاني يطق مثل (j) في كلمة (jam).
3. لنطق كلمة (mechanic) انطق حرفي (ch) مثل (k).
4. في كلمة (plumber) حرف (b) صامت لا يطق.
5. لنطق كلمة (faucet) انطق حرفي (au) مثل نطق حرف (o) في كلمة (north) وانطق (cet) مثل (sit).
6. لنطق كلمة (screwdriver) انطق الحروف (rew) مثل حرفي (ue) في كلمة (blue).
7. كلمة (patient) المقطع الصوتي (tien) يطق مثل كلمة (شن).
8. كلمة (architect) الحرفين (ch) يطقا مثل (k).
9. كلمة (mathematician) المقطع الصوتي (cian) يطق مثل (شن).





Write a paragraph  
of EIGHTEEN (18) words.

## Answers to Paragraphs

### Lesson 1

#### The plumber

- 1 My uncle is a plumber. He works all day. He fixes pipes and faucets. He is healthy. His job is very hard.

### Lesson 3

#### An electrician

- 2 My father is an electrician. He studied and practiced electricity. He connects your home to electricity. He fixes sockets. It's an interesting job.

### Lessons 4,5

#### A mail carrier

- 3 Amr is a mail carrier. He walks all day and gets a lot of exercise. He is healthy. He speaks to a lot of people. Everyone likes to meet him.

### Activity - Unit 5

#### A garbage collector

- 4 A garbage collector's job is very important. A garbage collector works hard to collect the trash. He keeps the streets clean. We all love him.

# Al-Azhar Exercises

الاسئلة الخاصة بالازهر الشريف

## A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:



1. Uncle Sameh is ..... years old. (50 - 40 - 30)
2. Uncle Sameh is a ..... (plumber - bus driver - mechanic)
3. Uncle Sameh takes ..... to school. (parents - children - teachers)

## B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل:

Why - children - teacher - job

- Gamal : Which ..... is the most interesting?  
Emad : I think being a .....  
Gamal : ..... do you like this job?  
Emad : Because teachers help and teach .....

## C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ali. I love my father. My father's name is Ahmed. He is fifty years old. He is a plumber. He fixes pipes and faucets. He works all the day. My father is very helpful.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. How old is Ali's father? .....
2. What's the father's job? .....

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. Ali's father is ..... (bad - not good - helpful)
4. He fixes ..... (boots - pipes - pens)
5. Ali's father works all the ..... (hour - minute - day)



Where do you work?

### D- Vocabulary and Structures



Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... plumbers fix faucets.  
☐ a This                      ☐ b That                      ☐ c These
2. The teacher should be ..... all the time.  
☐ a angry                      ☐ b patient                      ☐ c dangerous
3. She loved to experiment. She was very .....  
☐ a angry                      ☐ b lazy                      ☐ c curious
4. Look, ..... bird is flying.  
☐ a these                      ☐ b that                      ☐ c those
5. A ..... delivers letters and parcels.  
☐ a plumber                      ☐ b mechanic                      ☐ c mail carrier

### E- Writing



Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. are - day - all - outside - Mail carriers .  
 .....
2. can - fast - travel -        - electricity?  
 .....
3. gets -        - very - carrier - up - early.  
 .....
4. put - anything -        - a socket - into.  
 .....
5.        - the children - brings - school - to.  
 .....



# Activities

Unit 5



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mahmoud is a/an .....  
☐ a teacher      ☐ farmer      ☐ plumber      ☐ electrician
2. Mahmoud is .....  
☐ a lazy      ☐ bad      ☐ sad      ☐ curious
3. Mahmoud practiced electricity for ..... years.  
☐ a three      ☐ b two      ☐ c four      ☐ d five
4. Mahmoud knows how to work safely with .....  
☐ a pipes      ☐ b electricity      ☐ c fans      ☐ d blocks

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mechanics ..... our cars.  
☐ a play      ☐ b eat      ☐ c fix      ☐ d build
2. A ..... delivers your parcels.  
☐ a teacher      ☐ b mechanic      ☐ c mail carrier      ☐ d plumber
3. Never touch anything electrical with ..... hands.  
☐ a dry      ☐ b wet      ☐ c curious      ☐ d sad
4. A garbage collector works hard to collect .....  
☐ a food      ☐ b water      ☐ c trash      ☐ d parcels

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

important - driver - drives - fix - connects

My father's friend is a bus driver. He ..... buses. He brings the children to school. All the children like him. A bus ..... drives to many different places. He needs the mechanic to ..... the bus. His job is .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

خبر الشيخ (2024)

Heba, Habiba, and Omar are cousins. But they are all very different. When Heba was young, she was a curious child. She loved experiment. She used a screwdriver to open old cell phones and radios. When Habiba was young, she liked to play with blocks. Her favorite toy was her doll. Omar was always very patient and he liked helping other people. He was never angry with his younger brother. He explained things to him all the time.





## Where do you work?

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Heba, Habiba, and Omar are .....  
☐ a friends      ☐ b students      ☐ c cousins      ☐ d classmates
- Habiba's favorite toy was her .....  
☐ a screwdriver      ☐ b blocks      ☐ c doll      ☐ d radio

### B. Answer the following questions:

- What did Heba use the screwdriver? .....
- What did Omar like doing? .....

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- ..... **(These)** is my screwdriver.
- Those ..... **(is)** the mail carrier's parcels.
- ..... **(Making)** sure your hands are dry.
- ..... **(That)** mechanics work hard.

### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i want to be a teacher

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A garbage collector

collects - trash

Theme

2

Unit 6

# Myself and others

## What do you do?

ماذا تعمل؟



### Objectives of the Unit

### أهداف الوحدة

1. Read and learn about more jobs.

- يتعلم الطالب ويقرأ عن المزيد من الوظائف.

2. Explore what an industry is and the names of some common industries.

- يستكشف الطالب عن الصناعة وأسماء بعض الصناعات الشائعة.

3. Know about prime numbers.

- يعرف الطالب عن الأعداد الأولية.

4. Distinguish and pronounce short vowel sounds.

- يفرق الطالب بين الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة وينطقها.

5. Learn about words with the prefix dis-.

- يتعلم الطالب عن كلمات تبدأ بالبادئة (dis).

6. Write about a job you want to do.

- يقرأ الطالب عن وظيفة يريد توليها.

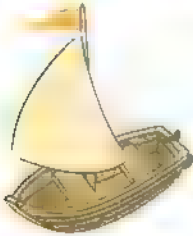


# Lesson 1

## What do you do?

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



boat

قارب



catch fish

يصادد سمك



fisherman

صياد سمك

Fishing

صيد  
السمك



net

شبكة



tourism

سياحة

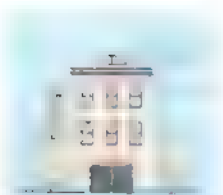
Tourism  
industry

صناعة  
السياحة



guide\*

مرشد سياحي



hotel

فندق



transportation

المواصلات

Help your child learn about different industries.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الصناعات المختلفة.





farmer

فلاح

## Farming

### الزراعة



يقطف



school

مدرسة

## Education\*

### التعليم



librarian

امينة مكتبة



teacher

مدرسة

## Other words



early

مبكراً

history

تاريخ

library

مكتبة

information

معلومات

factory

مصنع

nutrients

مواد غذائية

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

look after يعتنى بـ  
explain يشرح / يفسر  
turn يدور / يلف

looked after  
explained  
turned

### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

catch يصطاد  
wake up يستيقظ  
sell يبيع

caught  
woke up  
sold



## What do you do?

### Language Functions

• ندرس في هذا الدرس مجموعة من الصناعات والامور المرتبطة بكل صناعة كالعاملين بها وأماكن عملهم وطبيعة عملهم كالآتي:

Industry الصناعة	Who? من؟	Where? أين؟	What? ماذا؟
Fishing	fisherman	on the sea	catches fish / sells fish
Tourism	guide	hotels / outside	explains the history / tells tourists interesting stories
Farming	farmer	farm	grows vegetables and fruit and looks after them
Education	teachers librarians	school	teaches children looks after books helps children find information

### Study the following

- 1 A fisherman goes out on his boat and catches fish.  
- يخرج الصياد في قاربته ويصطاد سمك.
- 2 A fisherman sells fish in the market.  
- يبيع الصياد السمك في السوق.
- 3 A farmer grows oranges and looks after the trees.  
- يزرع الفلاح برتقال ويعتنى بالأشجار.
- 4 A farmer sends a lot of fruit to the factory to make orange juice.  
- يرسل الفلاح الكثير من الفاكهة إلى المصنع لعمل عصير برتقال.
- 5 A guide works in the tourism industry.  
- يعمل المرشد السياحي في صناعة السياحة.
- 6 A guide explains the history and tells the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.  
- يشرح المرشد السياحي التاريخ ويحبر السائحين بكثير من المعلومات الشيقة عن الأماكن التي يزورونها.
- 7 A librarian works in a school library.  
- يعمل أمين المكتبة في مكتبة المدرسة.
- 8 A librarian looks after the books.  
- يعتنى أمين المكتبة بالكتب.
- 9 A librarian helps children find the information they need.  
- يساعد أمين المكتبة الأطفال أن يجدوا المعلومات التي يحتاجونها.
- 10 An industry is a business that produces a specific type of things or gives a special kind of service.  
- الصناعة هي الأعمال التجارية التي تنتج نوع معين من الأشياء أو تقدم خدمة من نوع خاص.





استمع واقرأ. ما الوظائف التي يقوم بها هؤلاء الأشخاص؟

استمع إلى النص.



1- I'm a **fisherman**. I wake up very early every day, I go out on my boat and **catch** **fish**. Then **in the afternoon**, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to **restaurants** and homes **all over the world**.

2- I'm a **farmer**. I grow oranges. All year, I look **after** the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I **pick** the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.



3- I'm a **guide**. I work in the **tourism industry**. People come to my country and it's my job to **explain the history** and tell the **tourists** lots of interesting information about the places they visit.

4- I'm a **librarian**. I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of **new books** and I help children find the information they need



Listen again and answer:

استمع (للنص السابق) مرة أخرى واجب:

1- Who works in a school?  
A librarian.

2- Who works outside?

3- Who works on the sea?

4- Who grows food?

Help your child read and answer the questions.

ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ ويجيب عن الاسئلة.



What do you do?

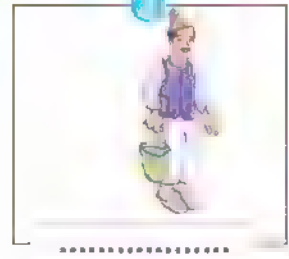
3 Write the words under the pictures:

اكتب الكلمات تحت الصور:

education - farming - fishing - tourism



fishing



انظر واكتب. اي من الكلمات ترتبط بالصناعة؟ هل يمكنك إضافة كلمات أخرى بالجدول؟

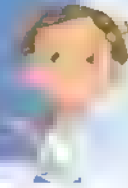
animals - teachers - hotels - nets - transportation - library - trees - boats

farming	
fishing	
tourism	
education	

Help your child sort the words.

ساعد طفلك في تصنيف الكلمات.

# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Adel works in the ..... industry.

☐ a education

☐ b fishing

☐ c tourism

☐ d farming

2. Adel ..... the history to tourists.

☐ a writes

☐ b reads

☐ c explains

☐ d draws

3. Adel works as a .....

☐ a farmer

☐ b librarian

☐ c fisherman

☐ d guide

4. Adel works outside and can see ..... places.

☐ a famous

☐ b old

☐ c small

☐ d boring

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A ..... catches fish.

☐ a guide

☐ b fisherman

☐ c farmer

☐ d librarian

2. The teacher works in the ..... industry.

☐ a education

☐ b fishing

☐ c tourism

☐ d farming

3. A ..... helps me in the library.

☐ a farmer

☐ b fisherman

☐ c librarian

☐ d guide

4. My father grows vegetables and fruits on his farm. He is a / an .....

☐ a farmer

☐ b engineer

☐ c guide

☐ d librarian

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**sells - homes - wakes - catches - farmer**

My uncle is a fisherman. He  up very early every day. He goes out on his boat and  fish. In the afternoon, he comes back and  fish in the market. His fish go to the restaurants and  all over the world.







## What do you do?

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I am Ali. I'm a farmer. I grow oranges. All year I look after the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I pick the fruit and send a lot of the fruits to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of oranges to the supermarket.

#### A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "grow" means .....  
☐ a feed      ☐ b live      ☐ c plant      ☐ d catch
- Ali sells some oranges to the .....  
☐ a market      ☐ b library      ☐ c school      ☐ d supermarket

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. How does Ali look after his trees?

4. Summarize the paragraph in one sentence.

### 5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

a guide explains the history

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

pick - grow trees

مجاوب عنه في اخر الوحدة



# Lesson 2

## CLIL: Science



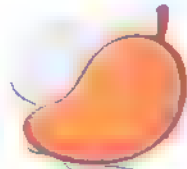
### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات.



cut down

يقطع



mango

مانجو



money

نقود

### غير متجدد



gas

غاز



oil

بتترول



coal

فحم

### Energy Resources

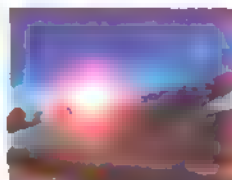
مصادر  
الطاقة

### متجدد



wave energy

طاقة الأمواج



solar energy

طاقة شمسية



wind energy

طاقة الرياح

Help your child learn about energy resources.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن مصادر الطاقة.



What do you do?

## Other words

## أخرى



wood	خشب	cause pollution	تسبب تلوث
pros	مميزات	right	صح
cons	عيوب	wrong	خطأ
sources / resources	مصادر	run out	ينفذ (يتهي)

## Conjugation of verbs

## صيغ الافعال

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
have / has يملك	had	eat يأكل	ate
grow ينمو	grew	sell يبيع	sold
burn يحرق / يحترق	burnt	give يعطي	gave
		cut down يزيل / يقطع	cut down

### Renewable

متجدد

It can grow again or never run out.

يمكن أن تنمو مرة أخرى أولاً تنفذ أبداً.

### Non- renewable

غير متجدد

It can run out or never grow again.

يمكن أن تنفذ أولاً تنمو مجدداً.

## Study the following

ندرس في هذا الدرس المصادر المتجددة وغير المتجددة للطاقة:

1 المصادر المتجددة (Renewable resources) هي المصادر التي لا تنتهي والموجودة دائماً.

2 المصادر غير المتجددة (Non-renewable resources) هي المصادر التي ستنتهي بالتأكيد

لأننا نستخدمها وسوف تنفذ:

Renewable متجددة	Non-renewable غير متجددة
wind energy طاقة الرياح	oil بترول
wave energy طاقة الأمواج	coal فحم
solar energy الطاقة الشمسية	gas غاز



**Read. Is a mango tree renewable or non-renewable?**

اقرأ. هل شجرة المانجو مصدر متجدد أو غير متجدد؟

**Two mango trees**

استمع إلى النص:



Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree next to her house. Every year, the sisters ate beautiful mangoes. Their children played under the trees.

One day, Malak said, "I don't need mangoes. I need money. Let's cut down my tree. I can sell the wood." She cut the tree and she sold the wood. Malak was happy.

Next year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Sara more mangoes.

Malak looked out of the window. There was no mango tree. She had no mangoes and no more wood.

"Don't worry," said Sara. "Plant this mango seed, and it will grow into a big tree."



**اقرأ مرة أخرى وأجب على الأسئلة:**

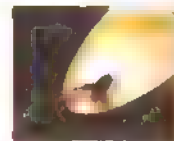
1. Why does Malak cut down the mango tree?
2. What are the cons of cutting down the mango tree?
3. What do you think of what Malak did? Was she right or wrong?
4. If you were Malak, would you cut the mango tree?

**Match the sources to the pictures:** **اوصل مصادر الطاقة بالصور**

- 1 oil
- 2 wave energy
- 3 coal
- 4 solar energy
- 5 wind energy
- 6 gas



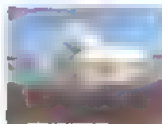
a



b



c



d



e



f

**اكتب كل مصدر للطاقة وصنفه في الجدول الآتي:**

**Renewable** متجدد

**Non-renewable** غير متجدد






# Activities

## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My uncle grows all kinds of .....

- ☐ a potatoes      ☐ b fruit      ☐ c coal      ☐ d vegetables

2. The mango tree is ..... my uncle's house.

- ☐ a under      ☐ b behind      ☐ c next to      ☐ d above

3. He sold the wood to get .....

- ☐ a money      ☐ b clothes      ☐ c trees      ☐ d energy

4. My uncle was ..... because there weren't any mangoes or wood.

- ☐ a happy      ☐ b sad      ☐ c excited      ☐ d nervous

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Coal, oil and gas are ..... energy resources.

- ☐ a renewable      ☐ b funny      ☐ c lazy      ☐ d non-renewable

2. People cut down the trees to ..... the wood.

- ☐ a buy      ☐ b grow      ☐ c sell      ☐ d draw

3. The ..... energy is a renewable energy.

- ☐ a wood      ☐ b gas      ☐ c coal      ☐ d solar

4. Plant this seed. It will grow into a .....

- ☐ a table      ☐ b bed      ☐ c tree      ☐ d chair

5. You need to cut down the ..... to get wood.

- ☐ a seeds      ☐ b houses      ☐ c trees      ☐ d money

6. Non-renewable energy sources never ..... again.

- ☐ a grow      ☐ b run out      ☐ c burn      ☐ d buy



### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

down - trees - sold - no - happy

My friend Amr needed money to buy things. He had a lot of ❶ \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden. He cut ❷ \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of trees. He ❸ \_\_\_\_\_ them. He was very sad because there were ❹ \_\_\_\_\_ trees in the garden.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Energy is very important in our life. Cars, trains, ovens and fridges need energy. There are two types of energy. Non-renewable energy is one of them. It can run out or never grow again. Oil, coal and gas are examples of non-renewable energy resources. The other type is renewable energy. It can grow again or never run out. Wind, wave, and solar energy are examples of renewable energy resources.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to \_\_\_\_\_ energy.

☐ a renewable

☐ b solar

☐ c non-renewable

☐ d wave

2. \_\_\_\_\_ is an example of non-renewable energy.

☐ a Waves

☐ b Oil

☐ c Wind

☐ d The sun

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What are the two types of energy? \_\_\_\_\_

4. What are the things in your house that need energy? \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إشتائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

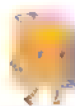
مجاوب آخر الوحدة

resources - renewable



# Lesson 3

## Fresh Fish Van Pronunciation & Math



### Key vocabulary

استمع الى المفردات:



fresh fish van  
شاحنة سمك طازج



fisherman صياد



grandpa جد



قرية

A short  
story

قصة  
قصيرة



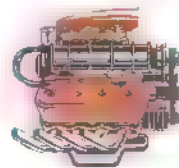
sad حزين



مُحبط

10

عشرة



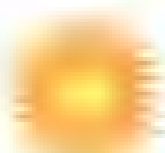
engine\* محرك



شاحنة



fish سمكة



the sun الشمس

Help your child know new words.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كلمات جديدة.



Other words **أخرى**

in front of  
opinion

أمام  
رأي

problem

مشكلة

Conjugation of verbs **صيغة الفعل**

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

shout يصيح  
skim يقرأ سريعاً (يتصفح)

Past ماضٍ

shouted  
skimmed

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

get يحصل على  
hear يسمع  
have fun يستمتع بوقته

Past ماضٍ

got  
heard  
had fun

1

شاهد الفيديو لتتعلم المزيد من المفردات

تصفح القصة سريعاً؟ من هم الشخصيات الرئيسية؟

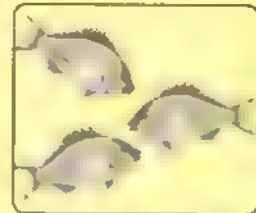
## Fresh fish van

استمع إلى النص



There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish".

One day, he was in front of my house. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and **disappointed**.



My mom saw the man. It was hot in the sun. She wanted to help.



Mom's dad (my grandpa) was a mechanic. He taught her all about cars. She looked at the old van's **engine**.

"It is a very simple problem. I can fix it," said Mom.

The old fisherman was surprised.

Then, we heard the sound of the engine. His van was fixed!

"Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave Mom ten fresh fish.



What do you do?

### Read and say. Close your book. Can you remember the sentences?

كم مقدار ما تتذكره؟ أجب. ثم اقرأ وتأكد.

1. What does the old man sell? He sells -----
2. Why was the old man sad and disappointed?  
Because he couldn't -----
3. Why do you think the old man was surprised? Because -----

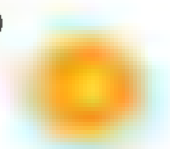


### Write and say.

صل واكتب.

fish - sun - ten - van

1



2



3



4



### Read and say. Close your book. Can you remember the sentences?

اقرأ القصة مرة أخرى واجب. استخدم الكلمات من تمرين ٣.

1. What is hot?  
The sun.
2. What does the old man drive?  
-----  
- ماذا يقود الرجل المسن؟
3. What does the old man sell?  
-----  
- ماذا يبيع الرجل المسن؟
4. How many fish does the old man give Mom?  
-----  
- كم سمكة أعطى الرجل المسن للأم؟



### Read and say. Close your book. Can you remember the sentences?

اقرأ وقل. اخلق كتابك. هل تستطيع تذكر هذه الجمل؟

1. You can have fun in the sun.
2. There's a man in a van.
3. He sells fresh fish from the river.
4. There are ten men standing on one leg.



# Pronunciation

★ Listen and say: استمع وقل

استمع إلى المفردات:



fish

سمكة



ten

عشرة



van

شاحنة



sun

الشمس

- 1- ندرس في هذا الدرس الصوت (/i/) و (/e/) ونلاحظ الفرق بينهما كما في كلمتي fish و ten وكلمتي pen: حيث نلاحظ في نطق (n) أن (e) تنطق مثل كلمة (pen) بمعنى في لكن (en) تنطق مثل (en) في (pen).
- 2- ندرس أيضا الصوت /æ/ و /ʌ/ والفرق بينهما كما في الكلمتين van و sun حيث تشبه كلمة van نطق كلمة man وكلمة sun تشبه نطق كلمة bus.
- 3- وندرس أيضا بادئة الكلمات (dis) والتي تعطي معنى النفي.

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

### أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

disagree

لا يوافق

disagreed

dislike

لا يحب

disliked

disappear

يختفي

disappeared

disobey

لا يطيع

disobeyed

disappoint

يُحبط

disappointed



Find more words in the text with the same sound:

اوجد كلمات أخرى في النص بنفس الصوت:

sun	van	fish	ten
bus	man	fin	pen
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____

Help your child learn about short vowels.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم عن الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة.



disagree - disappeared - disappointed - dislikes - disobeyed

1



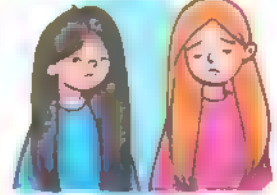
The boy is \_\_\_\_\_.  
He didn't pass the test.

2



She \_\_\_\_\_  
ice cream.

3



These friends \_\_\_\_\_.

4



I'm sorry because  
I \_\_\_\_\_ my mom.

5



The rabbit \_\_\_\_\_ from  
the hat.

## MATH

### Prime numbers الأعداد الأولية

- A prime number is a number you can divide only by itself and 1, e.g. 2, 3, 5, etc.  
ندرس في هذا الدرس العدد الأولي وهو العدد الذي يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد مثل:

2, 3, 5, 7, 11 .....

**لا حظ**

- العدد 4 ليس عدد أولي لأنه يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد وعلى رقم 2.

العدد 9 غير أولي لأنه يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى الواحد وعلى 3

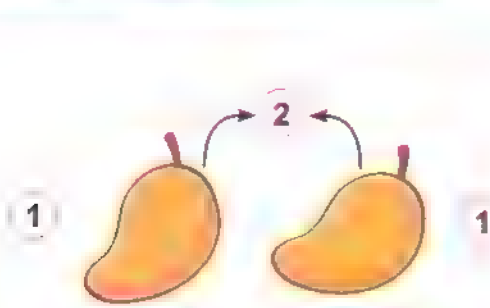
- لاحظ الأعداد الأولية من 1 - 100

(2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29, 31, 37, 41, 43, 47, 53, 59, 61, 67, 71, 73, 79, 83, 89, 97)

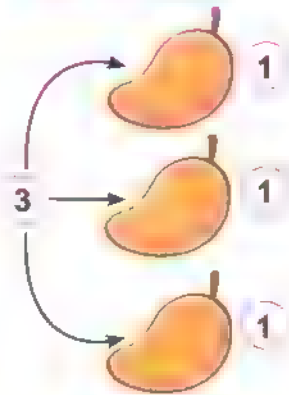


1 Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



$$1 \times 2 = 2$$



$$1 \times 3 = 3$$

2 Circle the prime numbers:

ضع دائرة حول الرقم الأولي:



it in red:

اجمع الآتي وإذا كان الناتج عدد أولي اكتبه بالأحمر:

1  $6 + 7 = \dots\dots\dots$

2  $37 + 20 = \dots\dots\dots$

3  $70 + 9 = \dots\dots\dots$

4  $40 + 4 = \dots\dots\dots$

Find out



The smallest prime numbers are:

- اصغر الأعداد الأولية هي:

2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23 and 29.

Is number 1 a prime number or not?

- هل رقم 1 عدد أولي أم لا؟





# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ramy is a bad boy. He ..... his mom.

- ☐ a disappeared      ☐ b loved      ☐ c paid      ☐ d disobeyed

2. The boy is ..... He didn't pass the test.

- ☐ a disappeared      ☐ b disappointed      ☐ c disobeyed      ☐ d disliked

3. We ..... the sound of the engine.

- ☐ a drove      ☐ b gave      ☐ c heard      ☐ d burnt

4. The mom could ..... the old van's engine.

- ☐ a fix      ☐ b shout      ☐ c teach      ☐ d play

5. My uncle is a ..... and he can fix old engines.

- ☐ a teacher      ☐ b fisherman      ☐ c mechanic      ☐ d guide

6. Can you ..... this story quickly?

- ☐ a shout      ☐ b skim      ☐ c fix      ☐ d jump

7. I can't find my cat. It .....

- ☐ a disappeared      ☐ b disappointed      ☐ c disliked      ☐ d disagreed

8. The fisherman ..... the boy ten fresh fish.

- ☐ a started      ☐ b gave      ☐ c taught      ☐ d fixed

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

pass - disappointed - sorry - disobeyed - disagreed

I visited my friend Sameh yesterday. He was ① ..... because he didn't  
② ..... the test. He didn't study well. He ③ ..... his mom. At the end he  
was very ④ .....



**3 Read the text and answer questions:** اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, my brother and I saw an old man from the balcony. He couldn't drive his van. He was sad and disappointed. I ran quickly to help him. My father was a mechanic and he taught me how to fix engines. I looked at the old engine and started to fix it. Then, his van was fixed. The man was happy and gave me some fresh juice.

**A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The underlined word "me" refers to the .....

- ☐ a old man      ☐ b father      ☐ c writer      ☐ d brother

2. The old man gave the writer some fresh .....

- ☐ a fish      ☐ b juice      ☐ c fruit      ☐ d food

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Why was the old man disappointed?

4. Who taught the writer to fix engines?

**4 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

the rabbit disappeared from the hat

# Lessons 4 & 5 Writing Project



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



## Other words

quick	بسرعة / سريع	world	العالم
patient	صبور	different	مختلف
ready	جاهز	hard work	عمل شاق
student	طالب	life	حياة
polite	مehذب	show respect	يظهر الاحترام
hair	شعر	favorite	مفضل
advice	نصيحة	shelf	رف
teacher	مدرسة / مدرس	surprising questions	أسئلة مفاجئة

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

change	يغير	changed
encourage	يشجع	encouraged
respect	يحترم	respected
ask	يسأل	asked
answer	يجيب	answered

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

think	يفكر	thought
teach	يعلم	taught
get off	ينزل من	got off

## Study the following

- 1 I want to be a teacher. - أريد أن أصبح مدرس.
- 2 Students always ask surprising questions. - دائماً ما يسأل الطلاب أسئلة مفاجئة.
- 3 Teachers need to think quickly. - يحتاج المدرسون أن يفكروا بسرعة.
- 4 They need to encourage their students. - يحتاجوا أن يشجعوا طلابهم.

- 5 They need to be very patient. - يحتاجون أن يتحلوا بالصبر.
- 6 A teacher can change their students' lives. - يستطيع المدرس أن يغير حياة طلابه.
- 7 A good teacher is always ready to learn. - المدرس الجيد يكون جاهز دائماً للتعلم.
- 8 Everyone in the class knows different things. - يعرف كل شخص في الفصل أشياء مختلفة.
- 9 I respect the librarian. I put my books back on the shelf. - احترم أمينة المكتبة. أعيد كتبتي علي الرف.
- 10 I respect the cleaner. I don't throw trash. - احترم عامل النظافة. لا ألقى القمامة (علي الأرض).

« لاحظ: عندما لا نعرف جنس الفاعل (رجل أو أنثى) نستخدم ضمير جمع يعود على الاسم:

- Teachers change **their** students' lives.

فكر واجب:

1. What are the good and bad things about being a teacher?

- ما هي الأشياء الجيدة والسيئة في وظيفة المدرس؟

استمع إلى النص:



When people ask me, "What do you want to do?" I answer: "I want to be a teacher. For me, it's the best job in the world."

For a teacher, every day is different.

Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' lives so teachers need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.

Everyone in the class knows different things.



اقرأ اليوستر، هل تتفق أم تختلف؟



I respect the cleaner.  
I don't throw trash.

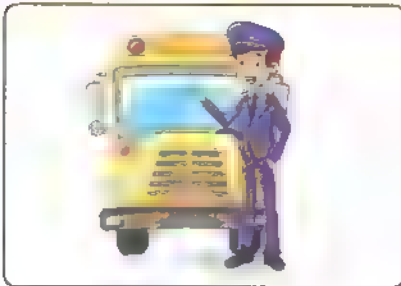


I respect the teacher.  
I listen to him carefully.

## How to show respect

كيف اظهر الاحترام

I respect the bus driver. I say  
thank you when I get off the bus.



I respect the librarian. I put my  
books back on the shelf.



# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة



1. We should show respect to the ..... around us.

☐ a animals

☐ b people

☐ c birds

☐ d children

2. I don't throw the ..... in the street.

☐ a trash

☐ b bus

☐ c shelf

☐ d cleaner

3. I say thank you to the bus driver when I ..... off the bus.

☐ a take

☐ b get

☐ c turn

☐ d land

4. I put the books on the ..... in the library.

☐ a door

☐ b shelf

☐ c window

☐ d floor

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I respect the teacher, I ..... to him carefully.

☐ a get

☐ b listen

☐ c put

☐ d throw

2. We ..... respect to the people around us.

☐ a disagree

☐ b show

☐ c talk

☐ d work

3. A teacher can change students' .....

☐ a hair

☐ b things

☐ c teeth

☐ d lives

4. A good teacher is always ready to .....

☐ a sleep

☐ b play

☐ c learn

☐ d drive

5. Teachers should ..... their students.

☐ a encourage

☐ b dislike

☐ c throw

☐ d shout





### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

ready - patient - encourage - lives - parents

Teaching is one of the best jobs in the world. The teachers need to ❶ their students. The teachers need to be ❷ ..... A good teacher is always ❸ ..... to learn. A teacher can change the students' ❹ .....

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you want to be a teacher

### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

The teacher's job

مِجَاب عَنْهُ آخِرُ الْوَحْدَةِ

hard - change

# Review



## Fishing صيد السمك



catch fish يصطاد سمك



net

شبكة



fisherman صياد سمك



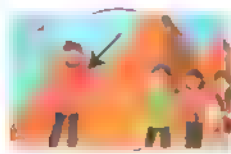
boat

قارب

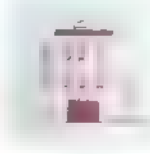
## Tourism industry صناعة السياحة



tourism سياحة



guide مرشد سياحي



hotel

فندق



transportation المواصلات

## Farming الزراعة

الزراعة



farmer

فلاح



pick

يقطف

## Education التعليم



school مدرسة



teacher

مدرسة



librarian أمينة مكتبة

## Energy Resources مصادر الطاقة

### متجدد Renewable



wave energy  
طاقة الأمواج



solar energy  
طاقة شمسية



wind energy  
طاقة الرياح

### غير متجدد Non-renewable



oil بترول



coal فحم



gas غاز



### ملاحظات في التوجيه من الكلمات

1 انطق كلمة (guide) مثل كلمة (ride) مع اختلاف أول صوت

2 في كلمة (education) تنطق الحروف (tion) مثل (شن) في اللغة العربية.

3 نطق كلمة (engine) ينطق حرف (l) مثل حرف (i) في كلمة (bin) وحرف (e) الأخير لا ينطق



Write a paragraph of  
**EIGHTEEN (18) words.**

## Answers to Paragraphs

### Paragraph 1

- 1** I'm a farmer. I wake up early every day. I pick fruit. I grow trees. I keep a lot of animals. I look after animals.

### Lesson 2

- 2** Wind energy is important for us. It's a renewable resource. The wind energy produces electricity. It can grow again or never run out. We don't need to burn this resource.

### The teacher's job

- 3** I want to be a teacher. The teacher works at school. The teacher works for many hours. It's hard work. The teacher can change their students' lives.

### Activity - Unit 6

### The Librarian

- 4** My sister is a librarian. She works in a school. She looks after all the books. Students like her very much. They respect her. They put their books back on the shelf.

# Al-Azhar Exercises

الاسئلة الخاصة بالازهر الشريف

## A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

استمع واختَر



1. The teacher's job is very \_\_\_\_\_. (easy - hard - sad)
2. A good teacher is always ready to \_\_\_\_\_. (sell - drive - learn)
3. Everyone in the \_\_\_\_\_ knows different things. (park - class - shop)

## B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل:

parents - polite - teaches - respect

- Ahmed : Do you \_\_\_\_\_ people around you?
- Youssef : Yes, I should be \_\_\_\_\_.
- Ahmed : Who \_\_\_\_\_ you to respect people?
- Youssef : My \_\_\_\_\_ teach me.

## C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer:

أقرأ واحتر:

Fishing is my favorite hobby. I often go fishing without catching anything, but I'm not sad. I get up in the morning and walk to the river. I catch fish. Then, I go back home. I give the fish to my mother. She is happy and cooks delicious fish for us.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What's your favorite hobby? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Who do you give the fish to? \_\_\_\_\_

Choose the correct answer:

3. I get up in the morning and walk to the \_\_\_\_\_. (lake - sea - river)
4. I often go \_\_\_\_\_ without catching anything. (swimming - playing - fishing)
5. My mother is happy and cooks delicious \_\_\_\_\_ for us. (meat - fish - rice)



## D- Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A ..... looks after all books.  
☐ a farmer                      ☐ b librarian                      ☐ c guide
2. Gas ..... a non-renewable energy.  
☐ a were                      ☐ b is                      ☐ c are
3. Teachers need to be .....  
☐ a lazy                      ☐ b bad                      ☐ c patient
4. The guide works in the ..... industry.  
☐ a farming                      ☐ b energy                      ☐ c tourism
5. We ..... the sound of the engine.  
☐ a drove                      ☐ b gave                      ☐ c heard

## E- Writing

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. grow - food - Farmers - the.
2. throw - I - trash - don't.
3. works - a school - Who - in?
4. respect - I - bus - the - driver.
5. sells - fish - A fisherman - the market - in.





# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My grandfather is a .....

☐ a guide

☐ b farmer

☐ c plumber

☐ d mechanic

2. He ..... up early every day.

☐ a sells

☐ b sleeps

☐ c picks

☐ d wakes

3. My grandfather grows .....

☐ a fruit and vegetables

☐ b wheat and corn

☐ c rice and sugar

☐ d flowers and trees

4. He sends a lot of the fruit to the .....

☐ a factory

☐ b market

☐ c park

☐ d school

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A teacher needs to ..... quickly.

☐ a eat

☐ b think

☐ c play

☐ d see

2. A fisherman works ..... the sea.

☐ a under

☐ b next

☐ c of

☐ d on

3. The solar energy is a ..... energy.

☐ a renewable

☐ b non-renewable

☐ c coal

☐ d bad

4. A fisherman ..... fish.

☐ a catches

☐ b plays

☐ c connects

☐ d fixes

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**bus driver - respect - trash - get - world**

There are many people around us. We should show ① ..... to them. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw ② ..... I respect the ③ ..... I say thank you when I ④ ..... off the bus.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

#### 4 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Nada. My mom is a teacher. She really likes her job. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' lives, so teachers need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Everyone in the class knows different things.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nada's mom is .....

☐ a nurse

☐ b doctor

☐ c teacher

☐ d vet

2. Teacher works for ..... hours.

☐ a little

☐ b few

☐ c many

☐ d minutes

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do teachers need to be very patient?

4. What makes a good teacher?

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Sara and Malak .....

(has) a tree.

2. Coal .....

(are) a non-renewable energy.

3. Hisham .....

(go) to the market every day.

4. Fishermen .....

(catches) fish in the sea.

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

why do you want to be a doctor .....

#### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

respect - shelf

The Librarian

مجاب عنه في نهاية الوحدة

## Review

# 2



### Objectives of the Review 2

### أهداف المراجعة

#### Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع التلاميذ المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٤ إلى ٦.

#### Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

1. To revise the key letter sounds from Units 4 - 6.

- يراجع التلاميذ الصوتيات من الوحدات ٤ إلى ٦.

2. To evaluate progress in Units 4 - 6.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح التلاميذ في استيعاب الوحدات من ٤ إلى ٦.

Listen and write the words:

استمع واكتب الكلمات:

استمع إلى المفردات:



1-



2-



3-



4-



5-



6-



7-



8-



9-



10-



11-



12-

انظر للصور واجب عن الاسئلة:

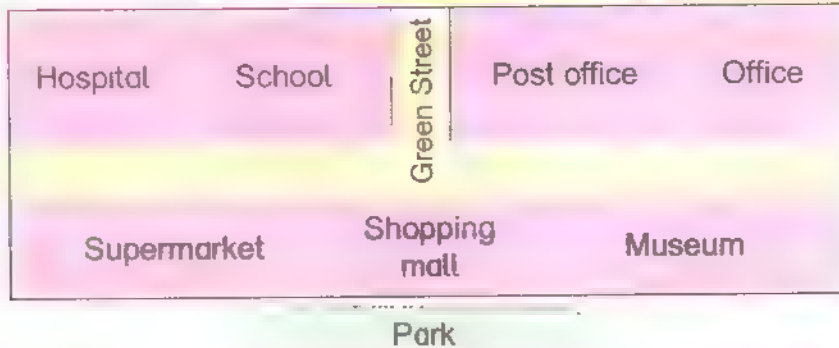


1. What's the mechanic doing? .....
2. What's the mail carrier doing? .....
3. What's the electrician doing? .....
4. What's the driver doing? .....



### 3 Look and correct the sentences

انظر إلى هذه الخريطة ثم صحح الجمل الآتية كما بالمثل:



5. The hospital is between the school.
6. The school is next to the museum.
7. The park is under the shopping mall.
8. The supermarket is behind the school.

### 4 Listen. Write the start and finish:

استمع واكتب البداية والنهاية:

استمع للنص الآتي واكتب البداية والنهاية في الخريطة السابقة:

#### Tapescript

#### نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



1. Go straight ahead. Turn right, go past the school. It's on the right.
2. Go straight ahead, keep going. Go past the post office. It's on the left.
3. Walk past the post office and turn right. The entrance is on the left, on Green Street.

- |                        |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Start: Green Street | Finish: hospital |
| 2. Start: .....        | Finish: office   |
| 3. Start: .....        | Finish: .....    |

### 5

that is, these are, or those are:

صل الجمل بالصور ثم اكتب اسم الإشارة المناسب:

1. .... a screwdriver.
2. .... my tape measure.
3. .... our tools.
4. .... my tools.



# Lesson 2

## Units 4 - 5 & 6

### PRONUNCIATION

1. Listen to the audio and repeat the words.

ضع خط تحت المقطع المشدد في الوظائف الآتية:

- |           |            |              |
|-----------|------------|--------------|
| 1- doctor | 2- plumber | 3- collector |
| 4- driver | 5- teacher | 6- mechanic  |

2. Point and say. Then write these words:

اشر وقل ثم اكتب هذه الكلمات:



- |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|

### TERM 1: PROJECT

1. Read and think about the project:

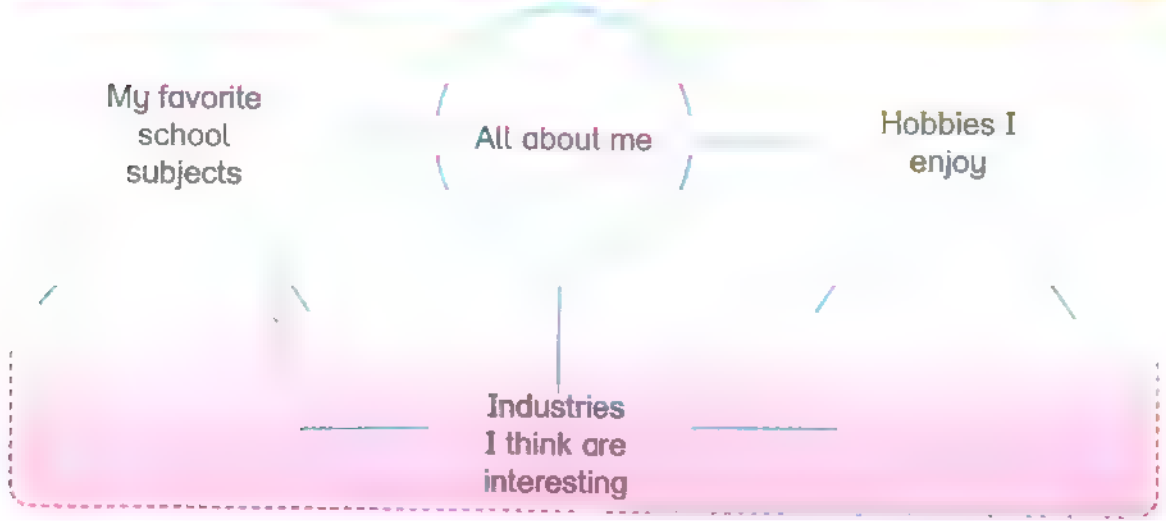
اقرأ ثم فكر في عمل المشروع:

Think about what job you want to do when you're older. Think about how it helps the community. Write a message to yourself in the future.

2. Look at the diagram and write the missing words.

the diagram:

فكر فيما تعرفه وما تستمتع به. أكمل الجدول:





## 3 Read, think, and complete

اقرأ وفكر وأكمل،

What do you want to be?

What do you need to do this job? Think about:

- Do you need to go to university?
- Do you need to practice?

Where does someone with this job work?

How does this job help the community?

## 4 Work in a group. Present your job.

اعمل في مجموعات وقدم وظيفتك،

I want  
to be a  
teacher.



the future:

انظر واكتب وأكمل: اكتب رسالة عن نفسك في المستقبل،

Dear .....

I will work in a ..... I want to be a ..... because

.....

.....

I need to ..... to be a good .....

I will help people .....

I hope you think your job is interesting.

Lots of love,

.....

Put the letter in an envelope and then put it somewhere safe.

Read it when you're older.

# Activities on Units (4, 5 & 6)



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Amr is a/an .....

- ☐ a plumber      ☐ b mechanic      ☐ c guide      ☐ d electrician

2. Amr studied ..... at school.

- ☐ a math      ☐ b electricity      ☐ c science      ☐ d English

3. Amr uses a ..... to fix electricity.

- ☐ a block      ☐ b radio      ☐ c screwdriver      ☐ d tape measure

4. Amr is happy when he ..... an electrical problem.

- ☐ a fixes      ☐ b watches      ☐ c climbs      ☐ d keeps

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The mail carrier is ..... because he walks all day.

- ☐ a unhealthy      ☐ b weak      ☐ c healthy      ☐ d rich

2. The mechanic ..... cars.

- ☐ a fixes      ☐ b plays      ☐ c eats      ☐ d draws

3. Supermarkets ..... food to customers.

- ☐ a sell      ☐ b eat      ☐ c drink      ☐ d draw

4. Never ..... anything electric with wet hands.

- ☐ a respect      ☐ b encourage      ☐ c touch      ☐ d travel

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hospital - front - flowers - next - between

I live in a big house. It's ❶ ..... to my school. There is a park in ❷ ..... of the school. There are lots of ❸ ..... and trees in the park. There's ❹ ..... behind the park.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واحب عن الأسئلة:

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. The fisherman sells fresh fish every day. One day, he was in front of an old woman's house. The van's engine stopped working, so the man couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed.





The woman wanted to help. She could fix the engine because her father was a mechanic and taught her all about cars. The man was surprised. He thanked the woman and gave her ten fresh fish.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The fisherman drives around the .....  
 a city                      b town                      c village                      d countryside
- The woman could fix the van's .....  
 a wheels                      b engine                      c windows                      d lights

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

- What did the man give the woman?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- A librarian ..... (**work**) in the library.
- ..... (**This**) mechanics work in the repair shop.
- Samy ..... (**walking**) to school every day.
- ..... (**Do**) play football in the class.
- My school is ..... (**next**) the park and the supermarket.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

how fast can electricity travel .....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

students - helps

# Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في الكتاب



نصوص الاستماع الواردة في الكتاب المدرسي

## Review

1

1- Listen and write the words:

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. seeds      | 2. watermelon |
| 3. fennec fox | 4. crocodile  |
| 5. emperor    | 6. leaf       |
| 7. onions     | 8. shoot      |
| 9. snake      | 10. spider    |
| 11. roots     | 12. sugarcane |
| 13. camel     | 14. palace    |
| 15. flower    |               |

## Review

1

1- Listen and write the words:

- |                |                      |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. kitchen     | 2. mail carrier      |
| 3. supermarket | 4. garbage collector |
| 5. bedroom     | 6. plumber           |
| 7. living room | 8. balcony           |
| 9. mechanic    | 10. bathroom         |
| 11. hospital   | 12. library          |

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع  
الواردة في وحدات كتاب

## Bit by Bit

### Unit

1

#### Lesson (1)

Farmers are good for our country. They produce many things. They can grow onions and carrots. They raise chickens. We can see healthy food in Egypt.

#### Lesson (3)

Once, there was a king who lived in a big palace. He had a lot of gold. There was a gardener called Ali who worked for the king. Ali looked after the trees and flowers. Ali found a bag of gold coins. He was an honest man. So he gave it to the king. The king was happy and gave Ali some gold coins.

#### Al Azhar Test

My dad is a scientist. He likes walking in the desert, but the desert is very hot.

#### Activity (1) - Unit 1

Yesterday, I read a folktale from China. It was about the emperor who lived in a beautiful palace. He gave pots and seeds to the gardeners to grow plants. Cheng was only good and honest. Cheng was the next emperor.

### Unit

1

#### Lesson (1)

Crocodiles are huge and scary. They live in the river. They eat meat and fish. They control the number of small animals.



## Lesson (2)

Camels are strong animals. They are perfect for the desert. They can carry people and things to cross the desert. Camels' milk is very delicious. We can use the camels' fur to make clothes.

### Al Azhar Test

Horses are very fast animals. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live up to thirty years.

### Activity (2) - Unit 2

My uncle has two horses in the garden. The garden is next to his house. He likes his horses. These horses look beautiful. They have large beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live from 25 to 30 years. They need people to look after them.

## Unit

### Lesson (1)

Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. Tomatoes need water to grow and the roots grow under the soil.

### Lesson (4&5)

Papyrus is a very special plant. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make many things. They used papyrus to make paper. Papyrus grows near the Nile.

### Al Azhar Test

Samir is my friend. We go to school by bus. Samir wants to be a doctor, but I want to be a teacher.

### Activity (3) - Unit 3

There are different plant habitats. Each plant has its habitat. For example, papyrus needs river habitat because it needs a lot of water to grow. Orange trees need agricultural habitat.

## Review

### 1

### Activity (4)

Camels are strong and they can carry people and things across the desert. They are tall animals with thin legs. They have delicious milk. Camels are good animals for the desert.

## Unit

### 4

### Lesson (1)

My father moved to a new apartment yesterday because he had a new job. There are three rooms. My favorite room is the living room with a big balcony. My mom likes the kitchen. She can cook food quietly.

### Lesson (2)

I live in a big town. There are lots of public places near my house. The supermarket is behind my house. I can buy our food. Next to the supermarket, there's a hospital. There's also the shopping mall between the post office and the park.

### Lesson (3 part 1)

My friend Hany lives in a village in Giza. It's next to the Nile. He lives in a house with his family. He has a small family. He has one brother. His name is Samir. Hany's house is the biggest house in the village. There are tall trees and plants behind Hany's house.

### Lesson (3 part 2)

I like riding boats in the summer. I go with my father to the Nile. My father works on a tourist boat. On the boat, I can see many interesting places and meet people from all over the world. My father speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

### Lessons (4 & 5)

My friend Mona works at a supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.



### Al Azhar Test

Ahmed is a good boy. He lives in a small village. He goes to a primary school. Ahmed's school is next to the hospital.

### Activity (5) - Unit 4

Nada loves her town. It is big, and it has offices, schools, parks, and many other places. Nada's town is clean and quiet. It is a good place to live.

## Unit

### Lesson (1)

I'm Fatma. My family were busy yesterday. My mom fixed the faucets in the kitchen. My sister took out the trash. My dad was fixing his car. I gave the parcel to the mail carrier.

### Lesson (3)

Amr, Fatma and Farid are cousins. When Amr was a child, he wanted to be an electrician. He always carried a screwdriver. Fatma wanted to be an architect. Farid wanted to be a teacher.

### Lessons (4&5)

My name is Sally. I live in Suez. My father is a plumber. When he was young, he wanted to be a bus driver, but he was better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars. My brother Ali is an electrician. My mother is a teacher. She is very patient and likes children.

### Al Azhar Test

Uncle Sameh is forty years old. He is a bus driver. He takes children to school early.

### Activity (6)

My brother Mahmoud is a curious electrician. He studied and practiced for three years before he became an electrician. He knows how to work safely with electricity.

## Unit

## 6

### Lesson (1)

My friend Adel is a guide. He works in the tourism industry. He explains the history and tells the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit. He always works outside and sees many famous places.

### Lesson (2)

My uncle has a big garden. He grows all kinds of fruit. There's a beautiful mango tree next to his house. One day, he wanted some money, so he cut down the tree and sold the wood. He was sad because there were no mangoes or wood.

### Lessons (4&5)

We should show respect to the people around us. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw the trash in the street. I respect the bus driver. I say thank you when I get off the bus. I respect the librarian. I put the books on the shelf in the library.

### Al Azhar Test

The teacher's job is very hard. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Everyone in the class knows different things.

### Activity (7)- Unit 6

My grandfather is a farmer. He wakes up early every day. He grows fruit and vegetables. He sends a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. He keeps animals and birds, too.

## Review

## 2

### Activity (8)

My friend Amr is an electrician. He studied electricity at school. He connects homes to electricity. Amr fixes lights. He uses a screwdriver to fix electricity. Amr loves his job very much. Amr is happy when he fixes an electrical problem.



PARENTS' GUIDE

# CONNECT

**4<sup>th</sup>**  
**PRIMARY FOUR**  
**FIRST TERM**

مادى  
تسميع المفردات  
والواجب المنزلي



الصف الرابع الابتدائي  
الفصل الدراسي الأول

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2



## Vocabulary

غير صحي	ثمرة بطاطس
دجاجة	ثمرة مانحو
أرز	موزة
بصل	يتمرّن
بطيخة	يلعب كرة قدم
عنب	يلعب كرة سلة
قصب السكر	يأكل حلوى
ثمرة طماطم	صحي
يشرب كولا	لسن
في عطلة نهاية الاسبوع	بطيخ
محقوق الحليب	الافطار
كرسي متحرك	الغداء
كرة السلة	العشاء
عالم	طعام مميز
سندوتش برجر	يأكل خضراوات
انواع سلطة	يلعب العاب الفيديو

## CONJUGATION OF VERBS

Present	Past	Present	Past
يَتَج .		يَعِد الطعام .	
يَرِي حيوانات		يَأْكُل	
يَزْرَع .		يَمَارِس	
يَطْعَم		يَمْشِي	
يَشْرَب		يَتَكَلَّم	
يَنْظُر إلى ..		يَفْعَل	
يَبْدُو		يَحِب	

## Activities

### Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It's ..... to exercise every day.

☐ a healthy

☐ b unhealthy

☐ c bad

☐ d busy

2. We raise ..... on our farm.

☐ a mangoes

☐ b chickens

☐ c milk

☐ d sugar

3. Who never ..... cold?

☐ a drinks

☐ b does

☐ c grows

☐ d walks

4. .... food comes from our country?

☐ a How

☐ b Who

☐ c Which

☐ d When

5. Egyptian farmers ..... rice in Egypt.

☐ a feed

☐ b grow

☐ c raise

☐ d practice



## Dictation & Exercises

6. The food ..... delicious. We like it.

**a** raises

**b** grows

**c** looks

**d** eats

7. I ..... a lot of sport at school.

**a** make

**b** do

**c** look

**d** walk

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

times - Watermelon - weekend - milkshake - basketball

I like healthy food. ❶ ..... is my favorite fruit. Mom also makes delicious banana ❷ ..... I practice ❸ ..... at school. I practice it three ❹ ..... every week.

### 3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Let's ..... (**going**) to the farm.

2. I don't drink cola, ..... (**and**) I drink milk.

3. Samy is a good teacher ..... (**but**) he helps his children.

4. I love pizza ..... (**and**) I only eat one a week.

5. There are some ..... (**mango**) in the market.

6. I'm very busy, ..... (**and**) I like video games.

7. My father speaks English ..... (**and**) he can't speak French.



# Lessons



## Vocabulary

معزة	أصيص ررع فارغ
بستاني	بدور
ملك	مسابقة
قصر	أمين
امبراطور	عناصر غذائية
صيد	قمح
ثمرة جواقة	خروف
مليون	جينة دمياطي
الف	مشهور
ليمون	فلاح
محصول	حكاية شعبية
يعيد تنظيف	رحل مهم
يعيد دهان	ميت
يعيد زرع	يصطاد

## Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعيش		يصغ	
يعمل		يعطى	
يسقى		يحسب	
يقول		يفوز	



## Dictation & Exercises

يأخذ	يحدث
يلمو	يعتني
يحضر	يكذب

# A

## Activities

## Lessons 3&4



**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. An ..... is someone who is like a king.

☐ a engineer

☐ b emperor

☐ c farmer

☐ d doctor

2. He looks after the garden. He is a .....

☐ a cleaner

☐ b nurse

☐ c gardener

☐ d vet

3. I like my friend because he doesn't lie and he is .....

☐ a bad

☐ b honest

☐ c unhealthy

☐ d lazy

4. He has a lot of money and he lives in a .....

☐ a garden

☐ b river

☐ c pot

☐ d palace

5. Ali is fast. He always wins the .....

☐ a competition

☐ b seeds

☐ c cheese

☐ d guava

6. The land in Damietta is rich in .....

☐ a pizza

☐ b cola

☐ c juice

☐ d nutrients

7. Domiat cheese is very .....

☐ a famous

☐ b honest

☐ c funny

☐ d short





**2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

honest - plants - watered - dead - lie

Cheng was a famous gardener. The emperor gave him seeds. He ❶ \_\_\_\_\_ the seeds, but there weren't any ❷ \_\_\_\_\_. The seeds were ❸ \_\_\_\_\_. He was ❹ \_\_\_\_\_ and became the next emperor.

**3 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ catch thousands of fish.

☐ Teachers

☒ Farmers

☐ Engineers

☐ Fishermen

2. The underlined word "good" means \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a bad

☐ b awful

☒ c nice

☐ d old

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What can farmers grow in Damietta?

4. Do you think life is good in Damietta?

## Unit 2

## Desert animals

## Lessons



## Vocabulary

حمل	تمساح
بجعة	تعبان
نسر / طائر العقاب	حصان
عنكبوت	أقدام مسطحة
حشرة	فرو
سحلية	رمل
فيل	ثعلب الصحراء
حشائش	ماء عذب

## Adjectives

قبيح	مزرع
محبف	غاضب
هام	قوى
خطير	مدهش
مفيد	لذيذ
جميل	حريص
رائع / ممتاز	ضخم
سريع	بطئ

## Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يقيد عدد / يتحكم		يحمل	
يعتقد		يعبر	
يعمل		يملك	

## Activities

### Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اذكر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can use camels' fur to make .....

(2023) مذكر

☐ a tables

☐ b food

☐ c clothes

☐ d juice

2. The ..... is a bird.

☐ a pelican

☐ b horse

☐ c fox

☐ d camel

3. Camels have large flat .....

☐ a noses

☐ b feet

☐ c eyes

☐ d ears

4. Spiders are very ..... They eat insects.

☐ a cute

☐ b kind

☐ c nice

☐ d helpful

5. Farmers like spiders because they eat .....

☐ a mice

☐ b birds

☐ c snakes

☐ d insects

6. Camels are ... for the desert.

(2023)

☐ a difficult

☐ b easy

☐ c perfect

☐ d kind

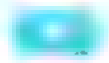
7. The elephant is .....

☐ a small

☐ b little

☐ c tiny

☐ d huge



## Dictation & Exercises

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

heads - strong - perfect - fur - cross

Camels are amazing . They are ❶ ..... animals. They help us to carry things and people to ❷ ..... the desert We can use their ❸ ..... to make clothes. Camels are ❹ ..... for the desert. But camels are noisy and can get angry.

### 3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. A mouse is ..... (**small**) than a cat.
2. A giraffe is ..... (**more tall**) than a horse.
3. A snake is scarier ..... (**that**) the spider.
4. Dogs are ..... (**noisy**) than cats.
5. The elephant is ..... (**big**) than a lion.
6. Eagles are ..... (**much**) beautiful than insects.
7. Camels are ..... (**perfect**) for the desert than horses.

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

there are many important animals in our country

# Lessons

3 - 4 5



## Vocabulary

جوعان	أوراق الشجر
دب	غزال الريم
نهر	دولفين
منقار	فئران
مخلب الحيوان	قرون
غضبان	عشب / حشائش
كف الحيوان	نباتات
حرارة	فراء أصفر وأبيض
أين؟	حائف
كم وزن؟	كمثري
كم طول (أفقي)؟	بسلة
كم طول (رأسي)؟	الصحراء الكبرى

## Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يصل إلى		يعتقد	
يرفع		ياخذ	
يشعر		يقول	
يحمي		يمشي	
يحتاج		يمقد	
يحافظ على		يسمع	
يفتح		ينظر إلى	

## Activities Lessons 3-4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My father was ..... because I lost my book.

☐ a happy

☐ b angry

☐ c funny

☐ d strong

2. I want a sandwich because I'm .....

☐ a amazing

☐ b thirsty

☐ c hungry

☐ d sad

3. The ..... is a big and strong animal.

☐ a pear

☐ b bear

☐ c mouse

☐ d spider

4. The rhinoceros ..... has long horns.

☐ a fox

☐ b camel

☐ c horse

☐ d gazelle

5. The fennec fox lives in the Sahara .....

☐ a Forest

☐ b Desert

☐ c Sea

☐ d River





## Dictation & Exercises

6. A: What ..... is the rhin gazelle? B: It's yellow and white.

**a** color

**b** time

**c** age

**d** heavy

7. The fennec fox's ..... keeps it warm.

**a** ears

**b** fur

**c** leg

**d** horn

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

warm - smaller - mice - longer - hear

The fennec fox is a desert animal. It's ..... than other foxes. It has big ears to ..... insects. It eats insects, lizards and small ..... It has thick fur to keep ..... at night.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I read the story of a pelican and the bear. They both were hungry. They saw a big, juicy fish in the river. The bear was stronger than the pelican. The bear was kind. He gave the fish to the pelican. The bear felt happy at the end.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The bear was ..... than the pelican.

**a** stronger

**b** taller

**c** happier

**d** scarier

2. The bear and the pelican were in the .....

**a** zoo

**b** river

**c** park

**d** club

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the paragraph in two sentences.

.....

4. How did the bear feel at the end?

.....

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

where do rhin gazelles live

# October Test 1 on Units (1)&(2)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاجتماع آخر الكراسة



1. There are a lot of ..... in our country.

- ☐ a fish                      ☐ b birds                      ☐ c insects                      ☐ d animals

2. Snakes and crocodiles are .....

- ☐ a dangerous                      ☐ b cute                      ☐ c small                      ☐ d short

3. Snakes and crocodiles eat .....

- ☐ a insects                      ☐ b vegetables                      ☐ c birds                      ☐ d plants

4. This ..... the number of these animals.

- ☐ a grows                      ☐ b controls                      ☐ c lives                      ☐ d takes

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The Egyptian food is .....

- ☐ a delicious                      ☐ b scary                      ☐ c ugly                      ☐ d noisy

2. The eagle and the pelican are .....

- ☐ a insects                      ☐ b birds                      ☐ c plants                      ☐ d fish

3. Camels are ..... than horses.

- ☐ a smaller                      ☐ b taller                      ☐ c weaker                      ☐ d shorter

4. The emperor lives in a big .....

- ☐ a palace                      ☐ b garden                      ☐ c park                      ☐ d school

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

busy - more - practices - video - unhealthy

My cousin is in a wheelchair basketball team at school. He ① ..... basketball three times every week. He drinks ② ..... water. He doesn't play ③ ..... games because he's very ④ ..... He plays basketball in the park.



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

We have three meals in a day. They are breakfast, lunch and dinner. They are important for our body. We should eat the right food in each meal. We should drink water and milk, too. Drinking milk helps our teeth and bones to be strong. Teachers and parents should teach children about the healthy and unhealthy food. Vegetables and fruits are important in our food.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We should eat the ..... food in each meal.

- a** right                      **b** wrong                      **c** unhealthy                      **d** bad

2. Drinking milk helps our ..... to be strong.

- a** hands                      **b** teeth                      **c** feet                      **d** ears

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. How many meals are there in a day?

4. What should teachers and parents teach children?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. A snake is ..... (**long**) than a lizard.

2. Hisham practices football, ..... (**and**) he doesn't play well.

3. Eagles are ..... (**little**) beautiful than giraffes.

4. I don't drink cola ..... (**but**) other unhealthy drinks.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

how long does a camel live .....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Rhin gazelle

**Guiding questions**

- 1- Where does it live?  
2- What does it eat?

.....

.....

.....

## October Test 2 on Units (1)&(2)

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Horses have large beautiful .....

- ☐ a legs                      ☐ b mouths                      ☐ c eyes                      ☐ d ears

2. Horses eat grass and drink fresh .....

- ☐ a juice                      ☐ b water                      ☐ c tea                      ☐ d cola

3. Horses can live in the .....

- ☐ a desert                      ☐ b house                      ☐ c river                      ☐ d palace

4. Horses need ..... to look after them.

- ☐ a insects                      ☐ b people                      ☐ c animals                      ☐ d birds

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Camels are noisy and they can get .....

- ☐ a healthy                      ☐ b angry                      ☐ c large                      ☐ d useful

2. I drink ..... for breakfast.

- ☐ a rice                      ☐ b milk                      ☐ c potatoes                      ☐ d chicken

3. Breakfast, lunch and dinner are .....

- ☐ a clothes                      ☐ b colors                      ☐ c meals                      ☐ d subjects

4. Crocodiles are scary and .....

- ☐ a small                      ☐ b huge                      ☐ c delicious                      ☐ d cute

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**beaks - scary - claws - eat - favorite**

I like animals. My ❶ ..... animal is the bear. Bears ❷ ..... fish. They use paws and ❸ ..... to catch fish. My brother **doesn't** like bears. He thinks they are ❹ .....

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. It's 20 centimeters tall. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The fennec fox loses heat from its .....  
 a nose                      b ears                      c mouth                      d legs
2. The fennec fox is ..... than other foxes.  
 a taller                      b bigger                      c smaller                      d longer

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Where does the fennec fox live?

4. How heavy is the fennec fox?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The bear is ..... (**strong**) than the pelican.
2. I want to play football, ..... (**and**) I'm sick today.
3. Crocodiles are ..... (**much**) dangerous than fish.
4. My uncle grows vegetables ..... (**but**) fruit on his farm.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

how heavy is the fennec fox

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقره إسنائة من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Guiding words

camels - perfect

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2



## Vocabulary

شجرة البرتقال

بذرة

ورقة شجر

زهرة اللوتس

تربة

نبات القصب

فسيلة/بنة

زهرة الأقحوان

جذر النبات

دوار عباد الشمس

بيئة صحراوية

سات العول

بيئة زراعية

شجرة السنط

انهار وبحيرات

وردة

باذنجان

ملكونة

فراشة

ضوء الشمس

حقيبة سفر

بالداخل



### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يموت		يجد	
يزرع		يصبح	



## Activities

### Lessons 1&2



#### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... big is the flower?

**a** Where

**b** Who

**c** When

**d** How

2. Lotus flowers grow near the ..... They need a lot of water.

**a** river

**b** desert

**c** sand

**d** village

3. There isn't much ..... in the desert habitat.

**a** sand

**b** rain

**c** sun

**d** air

4. A: How ..... is the daisy? B: Around 20 g.

**a** big

**b** long

**c** heavy

**d** tall

5. The roots of the plant grow under the .....

**a** sky

**b** sun

**c** soil

**d** air

#### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**black - water - red - seeds - balcony**

I like to grow plants. I grow tomatoes on our ① ..... Tomatoes are green before they are ② ..... They have ③ ..... inside. I ④ ..... the plants every day.



## Dictation & Exercises

### 3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The sunflower is the ..... (**bigger**) flower.
2. The rose is the ..... (**more**) beautiful.
3. The daisy is the ..... (**heavy**).
4. Let's ..... (**having**) it for lunch.
5. This story is the ..... (**less**) exciting.
6. The eggplant is ..... (**than**) most delicious.
7. My friend Hany is the ..... (**thinner**) boy in the class.
8. Mona and Nadia are ..... (**there**) cleverest girls.

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. why are tomatoes green

2. we water the plants every day



# Lessons

3 - 4 & 5



## Vocabulary

مزرعة

ششيب

أرض

بجعة

جاف

مفتاح الكهرباء

ضوضاء

ضوء الشمس

مياه الأمطار

صندل

لتر

ورق

دلتا النيل

السردي

مليار

مليون

شريحة

مائة مليون

يكنس

حلوى

في المزرعة

هواء ملوث

احداد

يعمل بجد

سلة

فخور بـ



## Dictation & Exercises

### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
ينبت		يقرر	
يموت		يتنفس	
يرمي		يعطي	
يضع		يأخذ	
يبدأ		يواجه	

## Activities Lessons 3-4&5



### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Farmers use ..... to water the plants.  
☐ a rainwater      ☐ b farm      ☐ c land      ☐ d flowers
- I drink four ..... of water a day.  
☐ a meters      ☐ b kilograms      ☐ c liters      ☐ d grams
- I don't like the ..... air and the noise.  
☐ a polluted      ☐ b fresh      ☐ c clean      ☐ d good
- There were no trees or flowers because the land was .....  
☐ a cry      ☐ b dry      ☐ c rich      ☐ d nice
- I'm ..... of my parents. They're great.  
☐ a afraid      ☐ b scared      ☐ c proud      ☐ d sad
- I always help my mom and I ..... the floor.  
☐ a sleep      ☐ b sweet      ☐ c feel      ☐ d sweep
- Ancient Egyptians used ..... to make paper.  
☐ a bamboo      ☐ b papyrus      ☐ c beans      ☐ d orange



**2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

warm - sandals - used - Giza - Nile

Papyrus was a famous plant in Ancient Egypt. The Egyptians ① it to make paper. They also made ② and baskets from papyrus. They grew it in the ③ Delta because it needed a lot of water and ④ weather.

**3 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last year, we had a science lesson about the life cycle of a tomato. Mr Hany, our science teacher, gave us tomato seeds to put them in the soil. We watered the seeds. The seeds germinated and the roots grew under the soil. After a few weeks, the plant grew leaves, flowers and tomatoes.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The passage is about the life cycle of a

- ☐ a sunflower      ☐ b tomato      ☐ c papyrus      ☐ d acacia

2. The ..... grew under the soil.

- ☐ a leaves      ☐ b tomatoes      ☐ c roots      ☐ d seeds

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. When did we have a science lesson?

4. What did Mr Hany give us?

**4 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

are you proud of your grandparents



# Unit 4

## Where do you live?

### Lessons 1 & 2



#### Vocabulary

حمام	مطبخ
قارب للسكن	حجرة الطعام
شقه	بنكوبة
خيمة	سوبر ماركت
منزل	حديقة عامة
مدرسة	مستشفى
مكتب	أمام
مكتب البريد	بن
منحف	فوق / أعلى
مركز للتسوق	حلف
حجرة المعيشة	بحوار
حجرة النوم	تحت
رائع	يستحم
بالكامل	مبنى
قماش	ببدو رائع



### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعمل		يرتب	
يعلم		ينتقل إلى (يعزل)	
يرسل		يسترخي	
يشترى		ينام	
يجلس		يرى	

## A

## Activities

### Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Nabil loves living on water, so he lives in a/an .....

- ☐ a tent      ☐ b houseboat      ☐ c apartment      ☐ d house

2. A: ..... the post office? B: It's next to the school.

- ☐ a How's      ☐ b When's      ☐ c Where's      ☐ d What's

3. We go to the ..... when we are sick.

- ☐ a supermarket      ☐ b museum      ☐ c park      ☐ d hospital

4. There's a boy ..... the door.

- ☐ a next      ☐ b behind      ☐ c of      ☐ d between

5. People in the desert live in a/an .....

- ☐ a houseboat      ☐ b tent      ☐ c apartment      ☐ d house

6. I can buy clothes at the .....

- ☐ a shopping mall      ☐ b hospital      ☐ c museum      ☐ d office



## Dictation & Exercises

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

relax - bathroom - whole - fantastic - balcony

My family moved to a new apartment. It's lovely and ❶ . My bedroom is very big. I can ❷ and do my homework quietly. My mother liked the living room. There's a ❸ and she can see the ❹ street.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I am Zeyad. I'm very happy because today I will visit my uncle. My uncle lives in a village next to the Nile. He lives in a house with his family. The house is between a green house and a yellow house. The village isn't big, but there are a lot of different places in it, a school, a hospital, a post office and a supermarket.

The children in the village can learn in the school. When people get sick, they can go to the hospital. People in the village buy their food from the supermarket. My cousins love their village because it's very quiet and there aren't a lot of cars there.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An ..... is the place where we buy our food.

- ☐ a hospital      ☐ b school      ☒ c supermarket      ☐ d office

2. Zeyad's uncle lives in a .....

- ☐ a tent      ☐ b Nile      ☐ c city      ☒ d village

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do the cousins love their village?

4. Where can people go when they get sick?

# Lessons 3 - 4 & 5



## Vocabulary

رحلات سفاري	سوق شرقي (بازار)
بنك	البحر الأحمر
محطة	استدر يمينا
قوارب سياحية	استدر يساراً .....
شاطئ الغردقة	سر بشكل مستقيم
متجر	الصحراء الكبرى
إها في ركن الشارع	اللغة الإنجليزية
على اليمين	فجاة
على اليسار	سائح

### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يبتسم		يقابل	
ينادي		يسقط	
يصيح		يعرف	
يسح		ينقذ	

## Activities

### Lessons 3-4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... right. It's behind the school.

☐ a Give

☐ b Make

☐ c Turn

☐ d Sleep

2. My father travels up and ..... the Nile.

☐ a next

☐ b down

☐ c for

☐ d at

3. We send ..... at the post office.

☐ a dinner

☐ b showers

☐ c stores

☐ d letters

4. The ..... is a place where we can buy beautiful things.

☐ a bazaar

☐ b bank

☐ c museum

☐ d station



5. There are tall trees in ..... of my house.

- ☐ a behind      ☐ b front      ☐ c next      ☐ d between

6. Hisham can ..... English and Chinese.

- ☐ a speak      ☐ b fall      ☐ c shout      ☐ d save

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

boat - people - desert - parents - Nile

I live on a boat in the summer. My ..... work in a tourist .....  
We travel up and down the ..... I like the summer very much. I see many  
interesting places and meet ..... from all over the world.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Kareem and his family went to Hurghada last summer. Hurghada is a big city and about 190,000 people live there. Kareem visited the Sahara Desert and saw a lot of tourists. Then, he went to the bazaars and bought presents for his friends. Kareem and his family had a good time there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hurghada is a big .....

- ☐ a village      ☐ b town      ☐ c city      ☐ d desert

2. Kareem went to Hurghada last .....

- ☐ a week      ☐ b summer      ☐ c month      ☐ d year

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the paragraph in two sentences.

4. Where did Kareem buy presents for his friends?

# November Test 1 on Units (3)&(4)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

تصن الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Gamal lives in a small .....

☐ a country

☐ b city

☐ c town

☐ d village

2. There's a school ..... the post office.

☐ a on

☐ b behind

☐ c between

☐ d next to

3. There isn't a ..... in the village.

☐ a museum

☐ b school

☐ c bank

☐ d post office

4. The village is .....

☐ a dirty

☐ b noisy

☐ c quiet

☐ d dry

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. They live in a city ..... Hurghada.

☐ a moved

☐ b called

☐ c worked

☐ d lived

2. We take showers in the .....

☐ a kitchen

☐ b bedroom

☐ c living room

☐ d bathroom

3. The supermarket is ..... the corner.

☐ a for

☐ b on

☐ c next

☐ d by

4. It's hot today. We need to turn on the .....

☐ a van

☐ b fun

☐ c fan

☐ d fox

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**speaks - travels - swim - places - tourist**

My cousin Hany is helpful and kind. He works on a ❶ ..... boat on the Nile. He sees many interesting ❷ ..... and meets people from all over the world. He ❸ ..... English and Chinese with tourists. He can ❹ ..... well, too.



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My aunt Amira is twenty five years old. After the school, she worked at the supermarket near her house. I see her every week when we buy food. Amira checks the food is fresh. She is very kind and helpful. She helps people when they can't find something. She works for eight hours.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The supermarket is ..... Amira's house.

- ☐ a behind      ☐ b near      ☐ c next to      ☐ d in front of

2. I see Amira every ..... in the supermarket.

- ☐ a month      ☐ b year      ☐ c week      ☐ d day

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Summarize the text into one sentence.

4. How many hours does Amira work?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (Goes) straight ahead.

2. Salem can ..... (speaking) Chinese.

3. Hisham is the ..... (tall) boy in the class.

4. The trees are in ..... (behind) of the apartment.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

siwa is in the west of Egypt

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**Guiding questions**

- 1- Where is it?
- 2- How many people live there?

# November Test 2 on Units (3)&(4)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع الجزء الكراسة



1. My uncle grows \_\_\_\_\_ on his farm.

- ☐ a potatoes      ☐ b tomatoes      ☐ c onions      ☐ d bananas

2. My uncle can take the \_\_\_\_\_ to grow new tomatoes.

- ☐ a seeds      ☐ b flowers      ☐ c leaves      ☐ d trees

3. My uncle plants the seeds in the \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a river      ☐ b soil      ☐ c desert      ☐ d lake

4. My uncle waters the plants every \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a month      ☐ b year      ☐ c week      ☐ d day

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ does the rose live? B: Around ten days.

- ☐ a tall      ☐ b heavy      ☐ c long      ☐ d big

2. I live with my family in a big \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a hospital      ☐ b apartment      ☐ c school      ☐ d bank

3. We saw the \_\_\_\_\_ of lightning in the sky.

- ☐ a star      ☐ b sound      ☐ c rain      ☐ d flash

4. The supermarket is \_\_\_\_\_ the shopping mall.

- ☐ a between      ☐ b behind      ☐ c next      ☐ d front

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

clothes - between - important - mall - sick

There are a lot of places in my village. These places are ☐ . There's a shopping ☐ where I can buy ☐ . There's a school ☐ the post office and the supermarket. I love my village.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend Emad lives on a farm with his parents. They plant millions of seeds. They use the Nile to water the seeds. They grow many fruits like mangoes and oranges. They plant trees and flowers, too. Emad's family are very happy. Emad is very proud of his parents.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Emad's parents plant ..... of seeds.

☐ a billions

☐ b millions

☐ c thousands

☐ d hundreds

2. The underlined word "plant" means .....

☐ a die

☐ b find

☐ c grow

☐ d water

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Who is Emad very proud of?

4. What do Emad's parents grow on their farm?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I think the rose is the ..... (**more**) beautiful.

2. The sunflower lives the ..... (**longer**).

3. .... (**Turns**) left, the shop is on the corner.

4. Our kitchen is the ..... (**hot**) room in the house.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

there's a balcony in my apartment .....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسبائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Guiding questions

1- Why is papyrus a special plant?

2- Where did Ancient Egyptians grow papyrus?

# Unit 5

## Where do you work?

### Lessons 1 & 2



#### Vocabulary

أدوات	كهرباء
ضوء	كهربائي
سباك	مقبس (بريزة)
عامل نظافة	عاصفة
ساعي بريد	برق
ميكانيكي	صدمة كهربائية
سائق أتوبيس	طرد
قمامة	أيدي متلة
آمن	سرعة
ماسورة	جاف
يجمع	يوهر الكهرباء
حنفية	قريب من

## Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يوصل		ينسى	
ينقط		يضع شيء في مكانه	
يجمع		يقود	
يأمل		يخرج/ يزير	
يحصل على		يلمس	
يصح		يحرق/ يحترق	

## Activities

### Lessons 1&2



#### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A/An \_\_\_\_\_ delivers letters and parcels.  
☐ a bus driver      ☐ b mechanic      ☐ c mail carrier      ☐ d electrician
- Never touch anything electrical with \_\_\_\_\_ hands.  
☐ a wet      ☐ b dry      ☐ c big      ☐ d small
- A/An \_\_\_\_\_ fixes cars and buses.  
☐ a plumber      ☐ b cleaner      ☐ c mechanic      ☐ d doctor
- A good mechanic is always ready to \_\_\_\_\_ buses and cars.  
☐ a sleep      ☐ b learn      ☐ c cook      ☐ d fix
- These are the plumber's .....  
☐ a speed      ☐ b storm      ☐ c tools      ☐ d light
- A/An \_\_\_\_\_ fixed pipes and faucets.  
☐ a mechanic      ☐ b driver      ☐ c plumber      ☐ d electrician

## Dictation & Exercises

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

wash - plumber - electrician - mail carrier - watch

There are lots of workers in our community to help our people. An ❶ ..... connects the electricity so you can use lights, ❷ ..... TV, or do your homework on a computer. A ❸ ..... delivers your letters and packages. A ❹ ..... fixes pipes and faucets.

### 3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. That ..... (are) the socket.
2. Don't ..... (making) noise.
3. These ..... (is) the plumber's tools.
4. .... (This) mechanics are fixing the engines.
5. This ..... (are) my sister's book.
6. These ..... (girl) play in the garden.
7. .... (That) mountains are very high.

بيلي سوييف (2020)

القاهرة (2020)

كهر الشيخ (2020)

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- what's your favorite job

2- electricity is very important





# Lessons 3 - 4 & 5



## Vocabulary

عيوب	مهندس معماري
مفك	راديو
لعبة المكعبات	شريط لاصق
كهربائي	عامل نظافة
تليفون محمول	سئ
جيد	فضولي
ثقيل	صبور
حقيبة البريد	بالغ
بالخارج	مزايا
من الجهة الأخرى	من جهة

## Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتصل		يغضب	
يتعلم		يضع	
يغير		يشرح	

## Activities Lessons 3-4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The ..... uses a screwdriver to open things.

- ☐ a architect      ☐ b electrician      ☐ c teacher      ☐ d farmer

2. The plumber ..... pipes and faucets.

- ☐ a takes      ☐ b fixes      ☐ c carries      ☐ d teaches

3. A mail carrier works .....

- ☐ a at home      ☐ b at school      ☐ c inside      ☐ d outside

4. How ..... can electricity travel?

- ☐ a tall      ☐ b high      ☐ c fast      ☐ d many

5. It's very ..... to touch electrical things with wet hands.

- ☐ a good      ☐ b safe      ☐ c happy      ☐ d dangerous

6. I didn't ..... angry with my little sister.

- ☐ a get      ☐ b make      ☐ c take      ☐ d have



**2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**tape - things - blocks - house - heavy**

My cousin Noha wants to be an architect. When she was a baby, she played with **1** \_\_\_\_\_. She put one block on top of another. Then, she started making **2** \_\_\_\_\_. She made a little **3** \_\_\_\_\_ for her cat. She always carried a **4** \_\_\_\_\_ measure and a pencil.

**3 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi! My name's Yasser. I'm in primary four. When I grow up, I want to be a mail carrier. There are pros and cons of being a mail carrier. It isn't an easy job. The mail carrier walks all day and his bag is very heavy. But, I like this job because I want to work outside all day.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The mail carrier's bag is very \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a heavy                      ☐ b easy                      ☐ c nice                      ☐ d small
2. The opposite of the underlined word "easy" is \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a scary                      ☐ b happy                      ☐ c difficult                      ☐ d huge

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Why does Yasser want to be a mail carrier?

4. Where does the mail carrier work all day?

**4 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- what do you like to do

2- come and get our lovely fish



# Unit 6

## What do you do?

### Lessons 1 & 2



#### Vocabulary

صيد السمك

مرشد سياحي

صياح السمك

المواصلات

شبكة

الزراعة

يصطاد سمك

يقطف

سباحة

أمنية المكتبة

فندق

طاقة غير متجددة

نقود

طاقة متجددة

تقوّل

طاقة الأمواج

فحم

طاقة شمسية

عار

طاقة الرياح

سوق

مطعم

## Conjugation of Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحرق / يحترق		يعطى	
يقطع / يزيل		يصطاد	
يشرح / يفسر		يبيع	
يستيقظ		يدور - يلف	
يعتنى بـ		يتمد (ينتهي)	

## Activities

### Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. These ..... will grow into a big tree.

- ☐ a seeds      ☐ b fruits      ☐ c nutrients      ☐ d boats

2. Coal and oil are ..... energy.

- ☐ a renewable      ☐ b non-renewable      ☐ c wind      ☐ d solar

3. People ..... down trees to sell wood.

- ☐ a explain      ☐ b watch      ☐ c cut      ☐ d take

4. A ..... explains the history to tourists.

- ☐ a librarian      ☐ b guide      ☐ c teacher      ☐ d fisherman

5. I send the fruit to the ..... to make fresh juice.

- ☐ a factory      ☐ b sea      ☐ c library      ☐ d park

## Dictation & Exercises

6. My job is to look ..... all the books.

- ☐ a on                      ☐ b after                      ☐ c out                      ☐ d for

7. I work in the tourism industry. I'm a .....

- ☐ a guide                      ☐ b librarian                      ☐ c fisherman                      ☐ d farmer

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

market - outside - sails - patient - catches

My uncle is a fisherman. He gets up every day and ❶ ..... his boat on the Nile. He ❷ ..... fish and sells his fish in the ❸ ..... . He is ❹ ..... and doesn't get angry when he puts his net in the river and doesn't find fish.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Tarek. I'm Egyptian. My father is a guide. He works in the tourism industry. He meets tourists from all over the countries. He explains the history and tells the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit. He speaks English, French and Chinese. He gets up early and goes to his work. He comes back home at night. He is clever and helpful, so all tourists come to Egypt to meet him.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tarek's father works in the ..... industry.

- ☐ a education                      ☐ b farming                      ☐ c tourism                      ☐ d fishing

2. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to .....

- ☐ a countries                      ☐ b tourists                      ☐ c information                      ☐ d places

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Tarek's father tell the tourists?

4. Why do tourists come to meet Tarek's father?



# Lessons 3 - 4 & 5



## Vocabulary

قريّة	جاهز
محبط	مهدب
محرك	يظهر الاحترام
صبور	مختلف
طالب	اسئلة مفاجأة
صوت [شيء]	مشكلة

### Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يشجع		يفكر	
يسأل		ينزل من	
يجيب		يعلم	
يحترم		لا يوافق	
لا يحب		يخط	
لا يطيع		يختفي	

## Activities Lessons 3-4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The mechanic can ..... the engine.

- ☐ a fix      ☐ b break      ☐ c come      ☐ d explain

2. We like our ..... We meet them every day at school.

- ☐ a vets      ☐ b mechanics      ☐ c teachers      ☐ d fishermen

3. I respect the cleaner, so I don't throw .....

- ☐ a history      ☐ b trash      ☐ c information      ☐ d problem

4. A good teacher is always ready to .....

- ☐ a catch      ☐ b throw      ☐ c learn      ☐ d sleep

5. The librarian looks ..... all the books.

- ☐ a after      ☐ b down      ☐ c on      ☐ d of

6. The van was fixed and we heard the sound of the .....

- ☐ a pipe      ☐ b faucet      ☐ c engine      ☐ d socket



**2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You can ..... (**having**) fun in the sun.
2. I can't find my cat. It ..... (**appeared**).
3. Teachers ..... (**need**) encourage their students.
4. Everyone in the class ..... (**know**) different things.

**3 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient, too. They work for many hours every day. It's **hard** work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives. A good teacher is always ready to learn.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The main idea of the text is about .....  

<b>a</b> houses	<b>b</b> families	<b>c</b> teachers	<b>d</b> environment
-----------------	-------------------	-------------------	----------------------
2. The underlined word "**hard**" means .....  

<b>a</b> easy	<b>b</b> difficult	<b>c</b> fast	<b>d</b> slow
---------------	--------------------	---------------	---------------

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What do students always ask?

.....

4. What can a teacher change?

.....

**4 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

teachers work for many hours

.....

# December Test 1 on Units (5)&(6)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. We should ..... all jobs around us.

- ☐ a make      ☐ b respect      ☐ c help      ☐ d connect

2. All jobs are ..... in our life.

- ☐ a dangerous      ☐ b important      ☐ c noisy      ☐ d ugly

3. The ..... fixes our pipes.

- ☐ a cleaner      ☐ b electrician      ☐ c teacher      ☐ d plumber

4. The electrician connects our ..... to electricity.

- ☐ a homes      ☐ b streets      ☐ c life      ☐ d pipes

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The mail carrier gets lots of ..... and is healthy.

- ☐ a blocks      ☐ b exercise      ☐ c sleep      ☐ d tools

2. My teacher is always kind and .....

- ☐ a nervous      ☐ b patient      ☐ c angry      ☐ d disappointed

3. Always ..... sure your hands are dry before you touch anything electrical.

- ☐ a put      ☐ b work      ☐ c make      ☐ d have

4. A garbage collector collects the .....

- ☐ a trash      ☐ b parcels      ☐ c sockets      ☐ d plugs

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

burn - learn - renewable - run - produce

Wind energy is important for us. It's a ❶ ..... resource. The wind energy ❷ ..... electricity. It can grow again and never ❸ ..... out. We don't need to ❹ ..... this resource.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My uncle has a big house in a village. There's a garden around his house. He grows all kinds of fruit. One day, he wanted to cut down the trees to sell wood, but, his father was angry. My uncle felt sorry because when he cut down the trees, he had no fruits and no more wood. Then, he went to the market and bought a lot of seeds to grow into big trees.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The uncle wanted to cut the trees to get .....  
 a water                      b wood                      c fruits                      d leaves
- The uncle bought the seeds to grow into big .....  
 a flowers                      b plants                      c trees                      d fruits

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- Why did the uncle feel sorry? .....
- What did the uncle buy at the market? .....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Where ..... (**does**) you work?
- ..... (**That**) are the mechanic's tools.
- Wind and water ..... (**is**) renewable resources.
- Never ..... (**touched**) anything electrical with wet hands.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

who teaches you to respect people .....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

The jobs around us

**Guiding questions**

- What are different jobs around us?
- What's your favorite job?

# December Test 2 on Units (5)&(6)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Mr Hossam works on the .....

☐ a farm

☐ b beach

☐ c sea

☐ d balcony

2. Mr Hossam goes out on his .....

☐ a van

☐ b boat

☐ c bus

☐ d car

3. Mr Hossam comes back in the .....

☐ a morning

☐ b evening

☐ c afternoon

☐ d summer

4. Mr Hossam ..... fish in his shop.

☐ a sells

☐ b catches

☐ c buys

☐ d eats

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The farmer ..... the fruit to the factory.

☐ a sends

☐ b raises

☐ c fixes

☐ d lives

2. The plumber connects the pipes and .....

☐ a parcels

☐ b trash

☐ c faucets

☐ d sockets

3. Electricity can be ..... It can burn us.

☐ a safe

☐ b dangerous

☐ c easy

☐ d beautiful

4. Malak ..... out of the window to see the trees.

☐ a looked

☐ b bought

☐ c caught

☐ d grew

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

ready - throw - people - get - explain

I want to be a teacher. I like helping <sup>1</sup> ..... I never <sup>2</sup> ..... angry with my little brothers or sisters. I <sup>3</sup> ..... things all the time. I'm always <sup>4</sup> ..... to learn.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My cousin Marwa is a librarian. She works in a school library. She looks after all the books. She buys lots of new books and helps children find the books they need. Children respect her, they put the books back on the shelf. She goes to her work at eight o'clock and comes home at two o'clock.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Marwa works for ..... hours.

- a six                      b five                      c seven                      d four

2. Children put the books back on the .....

- a door                      b shelf                      c desk                      d table

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Marwa work?

4. What does Marwa buy?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (These) is the water dripping from the faucet.

2. .... (Comes) and get your lovely fish.

3. .... (That) kites are flying in the sky.

4. Don't ..... (putting) anything into a socket.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

the guide works outside .....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Electricity

Guiding words

dangerous - burn

# General Tests



## امتحانات المحافظات على منهج الفصل الدراسي الأول

إدارة الشروق التعليمية

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A plumber \_\_\_\_\_ faucets.  
☐ a cleans ☐ b takes away ☐ c fixes ☐ d drives
2. An electrician connects homes to \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a water ☐ b garbage ☐ c houses ☐ d electricity
3. \_\_\_\_\_ takes away all the garbage.  
☐ a A plumber ☐ b A garbage collector  
☐ c A bus driver ☐ d An electrician
4. A bus driver takes \_\_\_\_\_ to school.  
☐ a children ☐ b horses ☐ c dogs ☐ d food

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ rice and lemons in our country.  
☐ a raise ☐ b grow ☐ c drink ☐ d play
2. The desert is \_\_\_\_\_ at night.  
☐ a hot ☐ b strong ☐ c cold ☐ d sunny
3. Horses like to drink \_\_\_\_\_ water.  
☐ a hot ☐ b dirty ☐ c salt ☐ d fresh
4. I live on a \_\_\_\_\_ because I love living on water.  
☐ a tent ☐ b cave ☐ c house ☐ d houseboat

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**sand - without - special - water - feet**

Camels are perfect for the desert. They have large flat  , so, they can walk on the sand. They can also live  water for a long time. Camels have  ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the  from coming in.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Shahd lives in a city called Hurghada. Hurghada is a beautiful city. It is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It is a big city and about 190,000 people live there. In Hurghada, there are lots of interesting things to do.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Hurghada is in the ..... of Egypt on the Red Sea.  
☐ a north      ☐ b south      ☐ c east      ☐ d west
- Hurghada is a .....  
☐ a city      ☐ b country      ☐ c village      ☐ d sea

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- Summarize the paragraph in one sentence.
- How many people live in Hurghada?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- A cat is small, ..... (**and**) the horse is big.
- Elephants are ..... (**big**) than dogs.
- The post office is next ..... (**two**) the library.
- When my brother ..... (**is**) a child, he played with toys.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

what did you do yesterday

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إثنائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Guiding words:

Your apartment

living room - bedroom

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاجتماع آخر الكراسة

1. Mohamed lives in a

- ☐ a city ☐ b village ☐ c zoo ☐ d park

2. Mohamed's house is next to the

- ☐ a shop ☐ b bank ☐ c hospital ☐ d school

3. Mohamed's father is a

- ☐ a farmer ☐ b doctor ☐ c teacher ☐ d nurse

4. Mohamed's father raises

- ☐ a sheep ☐ b goats ☐ c cows ☐ d chickens

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A is where an emperor lives.

- ☐ a park ☐ b palace ☐ c garden ☐ d street

2. The fennec fox has thick

- ☐ a beak ☐ b wing ☐ c fur ☐ d coat

3. Tomatoes are before they are red.

- ☐ a black ☐ b blue ☐ c green ☐ d yellow

4. I sleep in the

- ☐ a bathroom ☐ b bedroom ☐ c living room ☐ d kitchen

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

kitchen - apartment - bedroom - balcony - bathroom

My name is Heba. I live in an 1. My favorite room is the 2, where I can relax and do my homework. My mom loves to sit in the 3 where she can see the people in the street. We cook food at the 4.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My uncle is a fisherman. He wakes up early in the morning every day. He goes out on his boat and catches fish, then in the afternoon he comes back and sells his fish in the market. His fish goes to restaurants and homes all over the world.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My uncle is a .  
☐ a teacher      ☐ b fisherman      ☐ c doctor      ☐ d vet
2. My uncle goes out on his .....  
☐ a car      ☐ b boat      ☐ c bus      ☐ d train

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What does your uncle catch?  
 .....
4. Summarize the paragraph in one sentence.  
 .....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The lion is the ..... (**strong**) animal.
2. The school is ..... (**on**) to the park.
3. I like fish ..... (**and**) I don't like meat.
4. We love living on water, so we live..... (**in**) a houseboat.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i don't eat candy

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**Guiding questions:**

- 1- What do horses drink?
- 2 - What do horses eat?

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة

- Soha works at the .....  
☐ a school      ☐ b post office      ☐ c supermarket      ☐ d hospital
- We meet her when we buy .....  
☐ a flowers      ☐ b food      ☐ c plants      ☐ d books
- Soha is very kind and .....  
☐ a happy      ☐ b angry      ☐ c small      ☐ d thin
- We see Soha there every .....  
☐ a morning      ☐ b week      ☐ c Monday      ☐ d Saturday

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- I think we ..... chickens in Egypt.  
☐ a raise      ☐ b grow      ☐ c plant      ☐ d water
- "Honest" means someone who doesn't .....  
☐ a live      ☐ b play      ☐ c lie      ☐ d win
- My friend lives on a ....., she loves living on water.  
☐ a tent      ☐ b garden      ☐ c balcony      ☐ d houseboat
- Reed and lotus flowers grow near ..... and lakes.  
☐ a desert      ☐ b farms      ☐ c rivers      ☐ d forests

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

heat - fur - insects - foxes - desert

The fennec fox is a small animal. It lives in the ..... It's smaller than other ..... Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs the big ears to hear ..... and small animals. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fox loses ..... from its ears.



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hany. I spend my weekend at home with my family. We have three meals every day. They are breakfast, lunch, and dinner. I always have milk and eggs for breakfast. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the family sit together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. I often help her in the kitchen. Today we are having potatoes and chicken. It looks delicious.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My ..... cooks food for the family.  
☐ a mother      ☐ b sister      ☐ c brother      ☐ d father
2. We are having ..... and chicken for lunch today.  
☐ a pasta      ☐ b rice      ☐ c potatoes      ☐ d salad

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How many meals do they have every day? .....
4. What is Hany's favorite meal? .....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Camels are ..... (tall) than horses.
2. Horses ..... (has) large eyes.
3. That ..... (am) the post office.
4. I don't eat rice. I ..... (like) rice.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you like your job .....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

My house

Guiding words:

living room - balcony



**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الصفحة



1. Judy thinks she is .....  
☐ a healthy      ☐ b unhealthy      ☐ c brave      ☐ d lazy
2. Judy doesn't eat .....  
☐ a candy      ☐ b rice      ☐ c potatoes      ☐ d watermelons
3. Judy likes .....  
☐ a walking      ☐ b running      ☐ c sleeping      ☐ d eating
4. Judy does a lot of .....  
☐ a homework      ☐ b sport      ☐ c cake      ☐ d jobs

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Crocodiles are very .....  
☐ a cute      ☐ b dangerous      ☐ c nice      ☐ d kind
2. Damietta is ... for Domiat cheese.  
☐ a cold      ☐ b hot      ☐ c famous      ☐ d happy
3. The sunflower opens and ..... the sun.  
☐ a closes      ☐ b faces      ☐ c puts      ☐ d drops
4. My favorite room is the .....  
☐ a van      ☐ b living room      ☐ c face      ☐ d boat

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

village - live - trees - family - friends

My name is Zain. I ① ..... in a village next to the Nile . I live in a house with my ② ..... . Our house is not the biggest in the ③ ..... It's between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall ④ ..... behind the house.



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Plants are very important for us. In Egypt, farmers grow different plants. We are growing tomato plants on the balcony. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day, and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

**A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- This text is about  
 a jobs                      b animals                      c tomatoes                      d books
- We can take the \_\_\_\_\_ and grow new tomatoes.  
 a roots                      b fruits                      c seeds                      d leaves

**B- Answer the following questions:**

- What do tomatoes have inside?                      - - - -
- What color are tomatoes before they are red ?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Fatima loves ice cream \_\_\_\_\_ (but) chocolate.
- My city is the \_\_\_\_\_ (nicer) place to live.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ (traveling) to Paris last weekend.
- I like sitting next \_\_\_\_\_ (too) the couch.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

which number is not a prime number

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب مقرة إشتائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Guiding Words:

faces - seeds

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وأختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

اختَر الإجابة الصحيحة



1. Mariam lives in a big .....  
☐ a city                      ☐ b town                      ☐ c country                      ☐ d village
2. Mariam's house is near the .....  
☐ a Nile                      ☐ b canal                      ☐ c sea                      ☐ d lake
3. Mariam can see the ..... all day.  
☐ a river                      ☐ b desert                      ☐ c street                      ☐ d shop
4. Mariam's father is a .....  
☐ a teacher                      ☐ b doctor                      ☐ c farmer                      ☐ d mechanic

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Egyptian farmers ..... chickens.  
☐ a give                      ☐ b bring                      ☐ c fly                      ☐ d raise
2. My dad is a ..... He likes looking at animals and plants.  
☐ a plumber                      ☐ b scientist                      ☐ c doctor                      ☐ d driver
3. Tourists usually go on ..... when they are in the Sahara Desert.  
☐ a visits                      ☐ b picnics                      ☐ c boats                      ☐ d safaris
4. The ancient Egyptians made paper from .....  
☐ a papyrus                      ☐ b iron                      ☐ c metal                      ☐ d skin

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**cheese - fishermen - Life - farmers - catch**

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The ❶ ..... can grow rice, wheat and guavas. Fishermen ❷ ..... thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati ❸ ..... is very delicious. About one and half million people live in this part of Egypt. ❹ ..... is good in Damietta.



**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient, too. They work for many hours every day. It's **hard** work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives. A good teacher is always ready to learn.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The main idea of the text is about .....  
☐ a houses      ☐ b families      ☐ c teachers      ☐ d habitats
2. The underlined word "**hard**" means .....  
☐ a easy      ☐ b difficult      ☐ c fast      ☐ d slow

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. What do students always ask? .....
4. What can a teacher change? .....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (These) apples are on the tree. I can't get them.
2. I don't like candy, ..... (because) I like fruit.
3. A school is the place where we ..... (learns).
4. The cat is ..... (heavy) than the mouse.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

do you like mangoes .....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

**Guiding questions**

- 1- Where do you live?
- 2- What's your favorite room?

.....

.....





## اختبار فهم القراءة

إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Reham lives in .....

- ☐ a Cairo      ☐ b Aswan      ☐ c Hurghada      ☐ d Alexandria

2. There are some beautiful houses and .....

- ☐ a bazaars      ☐ b museums      ☐ c theaters      ☐ d houses

3. There is .....

- ☐ a the pyramid      ☐ b the Sahara Desert  
☐ c the West Desert      ☐ d the East Desert

4. .... go on safaris there.

- ☐ a Farmers      ☐ b Teachers      ☐ c Students      ☐ d Tourists

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Egyptian farmers ..... chickens.

- ☐ a give      ☐ b play      ☐ c raise      ☐ d build

2. A ..... is a place where living things live and grow.

- ☐ a habitat      ☐ b fur      ☐ c cinema      ☐ d library

3. Papyrus is a very ..... plant.

- ☐ a special      ☐ b poor      ☐ c bad      ☐ d ugly

4. The book is ..... the door, I can't see it.

- ☐ a next      ☐ b in front      ☐ c behind      ☐ d in

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

green - billion - rainwater - life - fruits

My grandparents had a farm .They grew many ❶ ..... . They used ❷ ..... to water the plants.They needed about a ❸ ..... liters of water a year. They used plants to make the land ❹ .....





**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar is a very good boy. He always gets up early. He works on tourist boats in summer with his father so his father likes him. He is very helpful. One day, the tourist boat stopped and Omar saw some children playing on the boat.

Suddenly, a small child fell into the river. The child shouted, "Please, help me!" Omar called his dad. Omar's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and finally he saved the child. The child smiled when he was safe and said, "Thank you so much!" It was a day to remember. Omar was happy because his dad could save the child.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Omar's dad can ..... so he saved the child.  
☐ a read      ☐ b swim      ☐ c jump      ☐ d run
- The children were .....  
☐ a swimming      ☐ b sleeping      ☐ c playing      ☐ d eating

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
- What happened to the small child?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- (This) ..... plumbers fix the pipes.
- Did you ..... (making) a house for your sister's doll?
- Crocodiles are the ..... (more) dangerous animals.
- That cat is cute ..... (but) quiet.

**6 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what do you like to do .....

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

A job you want to do

**Guiding questions:**

- What's your favorite job?
- What do you do in your job?

.....  
 .....  
 .....

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The fennec fox lives in the  
☐ a deserts      ☐ b mountains      ☐ c lakes      ☐ d seas
- The fennec fox loses ..... from its ears.  
☐ a seed      ☐ b heat      ☐ c meat      ☐ d feet
- Its ears are very .....  
☐ a small      ☐ b big      ☐ c fat      ☐ d short
- It needs big ears to ..... insects.  
☐ a listen      ☐ b see      ☐ c speak      ☐ d hear

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- He ate one ..... of pizza.  
☐ a swan      ☐ b slice      ☐ c slipper      ☐ d switch
- Spiders are very ..... animals. They eat insects.  
☐ a helpful      ☐ b dangerous      ☐ c noisy      ☐ d big
- We don't like the ..... air in the city.  
☐ a helpful      ☐ b noisy      ☐ c polluted      ☐ d special
- In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of .....  
☐ a camera      ☐ b rain      ☐ c sand      ☐ d lightning

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

walk - learn - place - like - supermarkets

I'm Jana. I'm eleven years old. I live in a small town. I love my town. It's small, but it has <sup>1</sup> ....., offices, schools and many other places. It's a good <sup>2</sup> ....., to live in. I <sup>3</sup> ..... to school every morning. I go to school with my friends. I <sup>4</sup> ..... my friends very much.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Dunia is eleven years old. She goes to a primary school. Her school is near her house. She has two sisters. Her father is a teacher and her mother is a doctor. Dunia walks to her school with her friends. She is good at English. She likes reading stories very much. She goes to the school library to read stories. She is a good pupil. She always gets full marks at school. She likes her family very much. They are a happy family.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Dunia's father is a .  
☐ a teacher      ☐ b doctor      ☐ c farmer      ☐ d plumber
- Dunia has no .  
☐ a sisters      ☐ b brothers      ☐ c father      ☐ d mother

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- What is the text about? .....
- Why does Dunia go to the school library? .....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- A mouse is ..... (**small**) than an elephant.
- Zyad ..... (**water**) the plants in his balcony yesterday.
- Mohammed ..... (**live**) in the village.
- Look at ..... (**this**) bird in the sky. It's very cute.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

what healthy things do you do

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إسبائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

"How to be healthy"

Guiding words:

exercise - cola



**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Judy thinks that she is .....  
☐ a healthy      ☐ b tired      ☐ c unhealthy      ☐ d unwell
2. Judy ..... to her grandma's house.  
☐ a drives      ☐ b walks      ☐ c flies      ☐ d rides
3. Judy really likes .....  
☐ a fishing      ☐ b talking      ☐ c walking      ☐ d swimming
4. .... are her favorite fruit.  
☐ a Bananas      ☐ b Apples      ☐ c Mangoes      ☐ d Oranges



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Adel works with tourists. He is a .....  
☐ a plumber      ☐ b guide      ☐ c doctor      ☐ d farmer
2. The tent is made of .....  
☐ a wood      ☐ b grass      ☐ c cloth      ☐ d glass
3. I can see the whole street from my .....  
☐ a shower      ☐ b balcony      ☐ c book      ☐ d pot
4. The roots grow ..... the soil.  
☐ a next to      ☐ b on      ☐ c under      ☐ d above



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**excited - help - dangerous - electrician - lights**

My name is Aser. I want to be an electrician when I grow up. My father is an ❶ .., too. He connects electricity, so people can use ❷ .., watch TV, or do homework on their computers. I want to fix things and ❸ .. people. I think electricity is ❹ ..



**Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Heba and Omar are cousins. But they are both very different. When Heba was young, she was a curious child. She loved to experiment. She used a screwdriver to open old cell phones and radios. When Omar was young, he was very patient and he liked helping other people. He was never angry with his younger brother. He explained things to him all the time.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Heba and Omar are .....  
☐ a friends      ☐ b students      ☐ c cousins      ☐ d classmates
- Heba loved to .....  
☐ a play      ☐ b sell      ☐ c travel      ☐ d experiment

**B- Answer the following questions:**

- What did Heba use the screwdriver for? .....
- What did Omar like doing? .....

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I like playing tennis ..... (**because**) volleyball.
- ..... (**This**) are my sister's books.
- The tent is ..... (**on**) front of the car.
- A: ..... (**When**) is your house? B: It's on the corner.

**Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

life is good in a village .....

**Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إيشاقبة من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**Guiding questions:**

- 1 - Where do camels live? Why?
- 2 - How do camels walk on the sand?

.....  
 .....  
 .....



## Tests

إدارة الاسماعيلية

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Omar lives in .....

- ☐ a Luxor      ☐ b Hurghada      ☐ c Aswan      ☐ d Alexandria

2. Hurghada is in the ..... of Egypt.

- ☐ a north      ☐ b south      ☐ c east      ☐ d west

3. Hurghada is on the .....

- ☐ a River Nile      ☐ b Lake Nasser      ☐ c Red Sea      ☐ d moon

4. About ..... people live in Hurghada.

- ☐ a 190,000      ☐ b 1900      ☐ c 119,000      ☐ d 1,900,000

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** احتر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The gardeners are good .. looking after gardens.

- ☐ a on      ☐ b at      ☐ c for      ☐ d next

2. My father doesn't like the ..... of the city.

- ☐ a happiness      ☐ b quietness      ☐ c noise      ☐ d beauty

3. The cleaners keep the school .....

- ☐ a dirty      ☐ b clean      ☐ c ugly      ☐ d bad

4. The sunflower dies and drops its .....

- ☐ a roots      ☐ b soil      ☐ c water      ☐ d seeds

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

insects - helpful - spider - small - huge

There are a lot of animals that live in our country. The crocodile is ❶ and scary. The ❷ is scarier, but it is very ❸. Farmers like spiders because they eat ❹.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Tomatoes are delicious and important. We use tomatoes in most of our food. Everyone can grow tomatoes on their balcony. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

##### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The general idea of the text is about growing  
☐ a flowers      ☐ b tomato plants      ☐ c mango trees      ☐ d peas trees
- There are ..... inside tomatoes.  
☐ a roots      ☐ b flowers      ☐ c plants      ☐ d seeds

##### B- Answer the following questions:

- What color are tomatoes before they are red?
- Which part of the tomato plant grows under the soil?

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Fatima is very clever ..... (but) she studies her lessons very well.
- Mr Ayman ..... (catch) fish yesterday.
- How long does the lion ..... (lives)?
- Are ..... (that) your friends?

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what do we grow in Egypt .....

#### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إسبائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

##### Guiding questions

- What does a mail carrier do?
- Where does a mail carrier work?



**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة



1. Egyptian \_\_\_\_\_ are important for us.  
☐ a rooms      ☐ b books      ☐ c farmers      ☐ d palaces
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ many things.  
☐ a play      ☐ b go      ☐ c cook      ☐ d produce
3. They grow \_\_\_\_\_ lemons, grapes and sugarcane.  
☐ a chicken      ☐ b cake      ☐ c onions      ☐ d milk
4. They raise many \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a food      ☐ b animals      ☐ c vegetables      ☐ d fruit



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ the sound of the engine.  
☐ a grew      ☐ b heard      ☐ c drove      ☐ d sold
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who is like a king.  
☐ a emperor      ☐ b farmer      ☐ c guide      ☐ d teacher
3. I never eat fish. I \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
☐ a love      ☐ b have      ☐ c dislike      ☐ d want
4. The man swam and \_\_\_\_\_ the child.  
☐ a saved      ☐ b bought      ☐ c decided      ☐ d worked



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

أقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**delicious - kitchen - food - bananas - seed**

Yesterday, Hana and her mom made lunch .They made it in the ❶ .  
 They cooked some special ❷ . They cooked rice ,potatoes and chicken.  
 They had ❸ and mangoes after lunch. The food was very ❹ .  
 Hana was very happy.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Alexandria is a big town in Egypt. It is in the north of Egypt on the sea. About five million people live in this part of Egypt. People visit Alexandria in summer to enjoy its beaches. When they go to Alexandria, they swim in the sea and they can enjoy their time visiting many places. Alexandria is famous for its amazing beaches and the Alexandria Library. Tourists like to visit Alexandria governorate.

##### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about ".....".

☐ a Damietta

☐ b Cairo

☒ c Alexandria

☐ d Aswan

2. People visit Alexandria in ..... to swim in the sea.

☒ a summer

☐ b winter

☐ c fall

☐ d spring

##### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where is Alexandria? .....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. .... (This) are Rasha's books.

2. My cat is the ..... (big) on our street.

3. The hospital is ..... (next) the school.

4. The rose is ..... (tall) than the daisy

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i listen carefully to my teacher

#### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Your favorite animal

Guiding questions

1- Where does it live?

2- What does it eat?

# 11

إدارة الحمام التعليمية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



- Papyrus is a very special .....  
☐ a animal                      ☐ b plant                      ☐ c food                      ☐ d vegetable
- Ancient ..... used papyrus to make many things.  
☐ a French                      ☐ b Italians                      ☐ c Egyptians                      ☐ d British
- They used papyrus to make .....  
☐ a juice                      ☐ b paper                      ☐ c dessert                      ☐ d tea
- Papyrus grows near the ..... Delta.  
☐ a Nile                      ☐ b Lake                      ☐ c Sea                      ☐ d River

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- I like to eat ..... food and exercise to keep fit.  
☐ a healthy                      ☐ b bad                      ☐ c unhealthy                      ☐ d ugly
- A ..... is where we can send letters.  
☐ a hospital                      ☐ b post office                      ☐ c mail                      ☐ d supermarket
- We use ..... to make sugar.  
☐ a onions                      ☐ b watermelons                      ☐ c sugarcane                      ☐ d grapes
- Some birds have long ....., they use them to eat.  
☐ a pens                      ☐ b beaks                      ☐ c peas                      ☐ d horns

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

need - fresh - smaller - desert - eyes

Horses look very beautiful. Horses live from 25 - 30 years. Horses have large beautiful ❶ ..... They eat grass and drink ❷ ..... water. Horses are ❸ ..... than camels. They can live in the desert, but they ❹ ..... people to look after them.

**Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi, I'm Nader. I live in a city called Hurghada. It is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there is a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Hurghada is a big Egyptian .....  
 a country                      b village                      c town                      d city
- It's in the ..... of Egypt on the Red Sea.  
 a east                      b west                      c north                      d south

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- Where's Sahl Hasheesh? .....
- What things can you do in Hurghada? .....

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- (These) ..... is the school where I learn.
- (Are) ..... the cat under the table?
- Crocodiles are (most) ..... dangerous than monkeys.
- I play football (but) ..... I eat vegetables.

**Punctuate the following:** صغ علامات الترقيم للاتي:

zain's house is next to the Nile

**Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إشتائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**Guiding questions:**

- 1- Where does it live? 2- What does it eat?



**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وأختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mom is in the .....

- ☐ a living room      ☐ b bedroom      ☐ c kitchen      ☐ d balcony

2. We're having potatoes and ..... for lunch.

- ☐ a tomatoes      ☐ b chicken      ☐ c meat      ☐ d burgers

3. All the food we have comes from .....

- ☐ a China      ☐ b Japan      ☐ c France      ☐ d Egypt

4. Egyptian ..... raise chickens.

- ☐ a farmers      ☐ b teachers      ☐ c nurses      ☐ d engineers

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The farmers grow .....

- ☐ a rice      ☐ b milk      ☐ c meat      ☐ d juice

2. Camels have flat .....

- ☐ a arms      ☐ b feet      ☐ c hands      ☐ d beaks

3. Tomatoes have ..... inside.

- ☐ a roots      ☐ b shoot      ☐ c seeds      ☐ d leaves

4. We buy food from the .....

- ☐ a office      ☐ b school      ☐ c bank      ☐ d market

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

electrician - computer - mail - faucets - walls

All the jobs are important. There are many workers in our community to help us. A ① carrier delivers your letters and parcels. A plumber connects ② to get water. An ③ connects the electricity and helps you watch TV and do your homework on ④.





**Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat and lemons.

There are cows and goats in Damietta governorate. Damiaty cheese is very famous. Life is good in Damietta!.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The text is about .....  
☐ a Fayoum      ☐ b Cairo      ☐ c Luxor      ☐ d Damietta
- ..... catch thousands of fish.  
☐ a Teachers      ☐ b Engineers      ☐ c Fishermen      ☐ d Farmers

**B. Answer the following questions:**

- What can farmers grow in Damietta? .....
- Do you think life is good in Damietta? .....



**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The blue car is ..... (**old**) than the red car.
- The car is ..... (**front**) to the tent.
- This ..... (**are**) my bag.
- I like fish, ..... (**and**) I don't like eggs.



**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

which is your favorite room .....



**Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Guiding words

acacia - camels

Desert habitat

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Zain lives in a \_\_\_\_\_ next to the Nile.

- ☐ a city      ☐ b village      ☐ c town      ☐ d park

2. Zain lives in a house with his \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a friends      ☐ b teachers      ☐ c uncle      ☐ d family

3. Zain's house is between a \_\_\_\_\_ house and a brown house.

- ☐ a yellow      ☐ b red      ☐ c green      ☐ d blue

4. There are tall trees \_\_\_\_\_ the house.

- ☐ a behind      ☐ b under      ☐ c in front of      ☐ d in

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A \_\_\_\_\_ fixed pipes and faucets.

- ☐ a plumber      ☐ b mechanic      ☐ c driver      ☐ d bus driver

2. Farmers in my country \_\_\_\_\_ chickens and cows.

- ☐ a plant      ☐ b grow      ☐ c raise      ☐ d drink

3. In the desert, people live in \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a tents      ☐ b nests      ☐ c apartments      ☐ d houseboats

4. Fishermen \_\_\_\_\_ thousands of fish in the sea.

- ☐ a grow      ☐ b paint      ☐ c catch      ☐ d write

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**collector - mechanic - driver - pipes - city**

We can all help each other in our community. Many people around us have special skills to help us. For example, a bus **1** \_\_\_\_\_ helps the builder go to his work. When the bus breaks down, the bus driver needs a **2** \_\_\_\_\_ to fix it. A garbage **3** \_\_\_\_\_ takes the trash. We can make our **4** \_\_\_\_\_ a better place to live in.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** امراً النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ahmed. I'm in grade four. At school, our teacher told us how to grow tomatoes. First, you plant the tomatoes seeds in the soil and water them every day. The plant needs water and sunlight to grow. After that, the seeds grow roots under the soil. Then, the shoot grows above the soil. Finally, the plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomatoes. My tomatoes are very delicious.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Ahmed is in grade .....  
 a one                      b two                      c three                      d four
2. The seeds grow ..... under the soil.  
 a flowers                      b grapes                      c roots                      d shoot

**B. Answer the following questions:**

3. Summarize the main idea of the text in a sentence.  
 .....
4. What does the plant need to grow?  
 .....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The giraffe is ..... (tall) than the horse.
2. I eat fish ..... (but) rice.
3. This ..... (are) the school bus.
4. My house is next..... (of) my school.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

hany is my best brother

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Guiding words:

The electrician

dangerous - electricity

.....

.....

.....

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكرتون



1. My grandfather is a / an .....  
☐ a farmer                      ☐ b plumber                      ☐ c electrician                      ☐ d teacher
2. He has a small .....  
☐ a park                      ☐ b farm                      ☐ c office                      ☐ d zoo
3. He raises ..... and sheep.  
☐ a cows                      ☐ b chickens                      ☐ c pelicans                      ☐ d goats
4. We are ..... to eat fresh food.  
☐ a happy                      ☐ b sad                      ☐ c angry                      ☐ d patient

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The emperor is someone who is like a .....  
☐ a king                      ☐ b farmer                      ☐ c guide                      ☐ d vet
2. Horses eat ..... and drink fresh water.  
☐ a meat                      ☐ b grass                      ☐ c sand                      ☐ d fish
3. The roots grow ..... the soil.  
☐ a above                      ☐ b under                      ☐ c on                      ☐ d next
4. The ..... is a place where we buy food.  
☐ a office                      ☐ b hospital                      ☐ c supermarket                      ☐ d school

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

germination - tomatoes - flowers - red - grow

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can use these seeds to ❶ ..... new plants. This is called ❷ ..... We put the seeds in the soil and water them every day. Plants grow taller and bigger. The plants finally grow ❸ ..... and the flowers become ❹ .....

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** امراً البص ثم أحب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Alaa. I live in Hurghada. I live in a **beautiful** apartment. It has four rooms. For me, my bedroom is my favorite room. I can relax and do my homework quietly. It also has a big balcony. I love sitting on my balcony because I can see the sea. I really love my home.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

- The underlined word "**beautiful**" means  
☐ a ugly ☐ b lovely ☐ c huge ☐ d small
- There are ----- rooms in Alaa's apartment.  
☐ a three ☐ b four ☐ c five ☐ d six

**B- Answer the following questions:**

- Where does Alaa live?
- Why does she love sitting on her balcony?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The rose is ----- (**tall**) than the daisy.
- The tent is ----- (**between**) to the car.
- Those ----- (**is**) the mail carrier's parcels.
- A lion is the ----- (**more**) dangerous animal.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

adam likes healthy food -----

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** كُتب مقرة إثنائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

The teacher

Guiding words

patient - hard



**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع و أختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. We put a \_\_\_\_\_ in the soil.  
☐ a root                      ☐ b leave                      ☐ c seed                      ☐ d branch
2. The seed \_\_\_\_\_ water to grow.  
☐ a helps                      ☐ b needs                      ☐ c puts                      ☐ d goes
3. The roots grow \_\_\_\_\_ the soil.  
☐ a under                      ☐ b above                      ☐ c next to                      ☐ d between
4. The plants give us \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a books                      ☐ b fruits                      ☐ c fish                      ☐ d milk

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We should \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of sports.  
☐ a do                      ☐ b make                      ☐ c eat                      ☐ d drink
2. The pelican has a long \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a paw                      ☐ b beak                      ☐ c hair                      ☐ d head
3. The sunflower is the \_\_\_\_\_ flower.  
☐ a noisest                      ☐ b scariest                      ☐ c heaviest                      ☐ d longest
4. A/An \_\_\_\_\_ drives to many different places.  
☐ a mechanic                      ☐ b driver                      ☐ c plumber                      ☐ d electrician

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

on - catches - market - plays - wakes

My uncle is a fisherman. He <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ up early every day. He goes out  
<sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ his boat and <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ fish. He goes home with a lot of fish and  
 sells some fish at the <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. My uncle likes his job.







**Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Different people live in different places. My aunt moved to a new apartment with her family. They are very happy because they have a big balcony. My friend and her family live on a houseboat. It's small, but she loves living on water. In the desert, some people live in a tent. This home is made of cloth. I love living in a house because it is big. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. There is a big ..... in the apartment.

**a** bed

**b** TV

**c** balcony

**d** couch

2. My friend lives on a ..... on water.

**a** tent

**b** house

**c** apartment

**d** houseboat

**B- Answer the following questions:**

3. What is the main idea of the text?

4. Where do people live in the desert?



**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1 - I think I'm healthy. I like to ..... (**played**) basketball.

2 - Who ..... (**working**) on the sea?

3 - ..... (**Going**) straight and turn left.

4 - The mouse is ..... (**small**) than the lion.



**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

hurghada is on the Red Sea



**Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقره إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

**My favorite room**

**Guiding words:**

balcony - relax



**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Damietta is an Egyptian

- ☐ a governorate      ☐ b village      ☐ c town      ☐ d country

2. Its land is rich in

- ☐ a stars      ☐ b nutrients      ☐ c books      ☐ d fish

3. The farmers can grow many crops such as rice and

- ☐ a fruits      ☐ b vegetables      ☐ c wheat      ☐ d tomatoes

4. Fishermen catch thousands of in the sea.

- ☐ a birds      ☐ b fish      ☐ c animals      ☐ d sheep



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The park is next the museum.

- ☐ a to      ☐ b of      ☐ c off      ☐ d too

2. Tomatoes are before they are red.

- ☐ a blue      ☐ b green      ☐ c yellow      ☐ d brown

3. Egyptian farmers chickens.

- ☐ a bring      ☐ b give      ☐ c grow      ☐ d raise

4. He couldn't start his van. He was

- ☐ a disobeyed      ☐ b disappointed      ☐ c disagreed      ☐ d disliked



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

**coats - ears - water - horns - grass**

Rhim gazelles are beautiful animals. They have big ① and long

② . They eat ③ . They have yellow white ④ . They

live in the Sahara Desert.



### 9 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister Mona is in grade four. She wants to be an architect. When Mona was three, she played with blocks. When she was older, she started making things. She made a house for her cat. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. My father and mother always help her.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about a / an .....  
☐ a job                      ☐ b animal                      ☐ c hospital                      ☐ d office
- Mona's ..... always help her.  
☐ a father                      ☐ b mother                      ☐ c parents                      ☐ d cousins

#### B- Answer the following questions:

- What did Mona do when she was three? .....
- What does she want to be? .....

### 10 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- 1 - ..... (**That**) mountains are very high.
- 2 - The camel is stronger ..... (**then**) the houses.
- 3 - The shopping mall is in front ..... (**in**) the office.
- 4 - Let's ..... (**eating**) our lunch.

### 11 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

he lives in Cairo

### 12 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Guiding words:

repair shop - fix

Mechanics

## Tests

### إدارة قوص التعليمية



**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Farmers work in the \_\_\_\_\_ habitat.

- ☐ a agricultural    ☐ b lake    ☐ c desert    ☐ d river

2. Farmers look after the \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a children    ☐ b insects    ☐ c trees    ☐ d fish

3. Farmers grow plants like \_\_\_\_\_ plants.

- ☐ a bean    ☐ b acacia    ☐ c reed    ☐ d tamarisk

4. Farmers sell some \_\_\_\_\_ to the markets.

- ☐ a mangoes    ☐ b oranges    ☐ c bananas    ☐ d carrots



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Spiders are very \_\_\_\_\_, they eat insects.

- ☐ a happy    ☐ b huge    ☐ c helpful    ☐ d bad

2. Egyptian farmers \_\_\_\_\_ chickens and cows.

- ☐ a bring    ☐ b give    ☐ c grow    ☐ d raise

3. A \_\_\_\_\_ helps children find the books they need.

- ☐ a librarian    ☐ b guide    ☐ c farmer    ☐ d fisherman

4. A lotus flower needs water, so it grows near the \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a river    ☐ b sand    ☐ c desert    ☐ d cave



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

mechanic - plumber - mail carrier - electrician - bus driver

There are different jobs. A \_\_\_\_\_ fixes cars and buses. An \_\_\_\_\_

connects electricity so we can use lights. A \_\_\_\_\_ fixes pipes and faucets, so

we can have water. A \_\_\_\_\_ delivers letters and parcels. All jobs are important.

**Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I am Hamza. I live in a small city with my family. It has stores, offices, a shopping mall, and a big library, I think it's a good place to live in. Every day, I go to school by bus because I live far from my school. My school is next to the hospital where my father works. In front of the hospital, there is a big park. I often go there on the weekends to play handball with my friends. There is also a big supermarket where we can buy different foods and drinks.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d**

- Hamza's school is \_\_\_\_\_ the hospital.  
☐ a behind      ☐ b beside      ☒ c next to      ☐ d in front of
- Hamza buys foods and drinks at the \_\_\_\_\_.  
☒ a school      ☐ b hospital      ☐ c park      ☐ d supermarket

**B- Answer the following questions:**

- How does Hamza go to school? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where is the park? \_\_\_\_\_

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The fennec fox is \_\_\_\_\_ (**small**) than the camel.
- Faten loves ice cream \_\_\_\_\_ (**but**) chocolate.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (**These**) is my aunt, she is a dentist.
- The horse is the \_\_\_\_\_ (**faster**) animal.

**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i can speak english and Arabic. \_\_\_\_\_

**Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

Rhim gazelles

**Guiding questions**

- Where do they live?
- What do they look like?

.....

.....

.....

# 18

إدارة سفاجا التعليمية

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Hurghada is in the ..... of Egypt.

- ☐ a east                      ☐ b west                      ☐ c north                      ☐ d south

2. Hurghada is on the ..... Sea.

- ☐ a Black                      ☐ b Green                      ☐ c Red                      ☐ d Blue

3. It's a ..... city.

- ☐ a small                      ☐ b big                      ☐ c bad                      ☐ d dirty

4. About 190,000 people ..... there.

- ☐ a visit                      ☐ b live                      ☐ c play                      ☐ d run

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I live on a ..... I love living on water.

- ☐ a tent                      ☐ b house                      ☐ c apartment                      ☐ d houseboat

2. .... are perfect for the desert.

- ☐ a Horses                      ☐ b Bears                      ☐ c Pelicans                      ☐ d Camels

3. I'm sorry, I ..... my parents.

- ☐ a disappear                      ☐ b disappoint                      ☐ c disagree                      ☐ d disobey

4. She is cooking lunch in the .....

- ☐ a bedroom                      ☐ b balcony                      ☐ c kitchen                      ☐ d living room

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

librarian - and - helpful - but - books

My mother works in a school. She is a <sup>1</sup> ..... She looks after the <sup>2</sup> ..... She helps the students. Her job is difficult, <sup>3</sup> ..... she likes reading books. My mom is very patient and <sup>4</sup> ..... I'm proud of her.







**Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Mohamed. I'm from Alexandria. My family moved to a new apartment.

It's near my school. So, I can walk to school with my friends.

Our school is near a big zoo, so we can go and see animals like giraffes, lions and elephants. We sometimes go to the beach to swim and enjoy playing with sand as we can build enormous sandcastles. All of us like going to the beach.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The underlined word 'It' refers to .....

- ☐ a the apartment    ☐ b Alexandria    ☐ c Cairo    ☐ d the beach

2. Mohamed goes to the school .....

- ☐ a by bus    ☐ b by taxi    ☐ c on foot    ☐ d by bike

**B- Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do Mohamed and his friends go to the beach?

2. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.



**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The giraffes are the ..... (**tall**) animals.

2. Let's ..... (**having**) lunch.

3. Camels are bigger ..... (**then**) fennec fox.

4. A: ..... (**When**) is your house? B: It's next to the park.



**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

why do plants need water



**Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (١٨) كلمة عن:

How to grow tomatoes

Guiding words:

seeds - root

19 إدارة الدخيلة التعليمية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



- Camels are beautiful and \_\_\_\_\_ animals.  
☐ a small                      ☐ b big                      ☐ c strong                      ☐ d clean
- They help us to \_\_\_\_\_ things and people.  
☐ a carry                      ☐ b eat                      ☐ c play                      ☐ d walk
- Camels' milk is \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a sweet                      ☐ b good                      ☐ c bad                      ☐ d delicious
- We can use their \_\_\_\_\_ to make clothes.  
☐ a teeth                      ☐ b fur                      ☐ c tails                      ☐ d eyes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- It's very \_\_\_\_\_ in the desert during the day.  
☐ a hot                      ☐ b tall                      ☐ c high                      ☐ d short
- I go to the \_\_\_\_\_ to buy clothes and shoes.  
☐ a school                      ☐ b office                      ☐ c hospital                      ☐ d shopping mall
- A: What's your favorite \_\_\_\_\_?      B: Mangoes  
☐ a fruit                      ☐ b color                      ☐ c sport                      ☐ d class
- The \_\_\_\_\_ land animal is the giraffe.  
☐ a tallest                      ☐ b shortest                      ☐ c smallest                      ☐ d fastest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

people - interesting - east - city - sea

I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the \_\_\_\_\_ of Egypt on the Red Sea,  
 It's a big \_\_\_\_\_ and about 190,000 \_\_\_\_\_ live here. In Hurghada  
 there's a beach and there are lots of \_\_\_\_\_ things to do.



**Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Omar. I'm in grade four. I live in a big house with my family. We have three bedrooms and two bathrooms. My mom cooks food in the kitchen. We watch TV in the living room. My favorite room is the bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father on the farm. He grows tomatoes and onions for us.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Omar's father grows ..... and onions.  
☐ mangoes    ☒ potatoes    ☐ tomatoes    ☐ dates
- Omar's favorite room is the .....  
☐ living room    ☒ kitchen    ☐ bathroom    ☐ bedroom

**B- Answer the following questions:**

- Where does Omar live?
- Who cooks food?

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Hend likes ice cream ..... (but) chocolate.
- How long ..... (does) camels live?
- Salma is ... (tall) than her sister.
- This ..... (are) a high mountain.

**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

he can speak English and Arabic

**Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة إسشائة من (١٨) كلمة عن:

The plumber

Guiding words

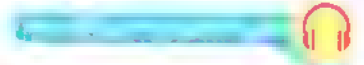
pipes - connect

## Tests

### Unit 20


#### A- Listening

 **Listen and choose the correct answer:** اسمِع وأختر الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. We moved to a new ..... (tent - apartment - houseboat)
2. Ali's favorite room is the ..... (bedroom - living room - dining room)
3. The balcony is ..... (small - big - short)

#### B- Language Functions

 **Read and complete the dialog:** أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

rice - delicious - right - special

**Mom** : Lunch is ready. I made some ..... food for us.

**Maged** : Mom, it looks ..... !

Which food comes from our country, do you think?

**Maged** : I think we grow ..... in Egypt.

**Mom** : Yes, that's .....

#### C- Reading Comprehension

 **Read the text and answer the following questions:**

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It is smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice. During the day, it is hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

1. Where does the fennec fox live?

2. What does the fennec fox eat?



**B - Choose the correct answer:**

3. The fennec fox is \_\_\_\_\_ than other foxes.  
☐ a smaller                      ☐ b bigger                      ☐ c taller
4. During the day, it is \_\_\_\_\_ in the desert.  
☐ a warm                      ☐ b cold                      ☐ c hot
5. The fennec fox's thick \_\_\_\_\_ keeps it warm.  
☐ a ear                      ☐ b fur                      ☐ c tail

**D- Vocabulary and Structures**



**Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:**

احتر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My cat is the \_\_\_\_\_ on our street.  
☐ a biggest                      ☐ b big                      ☐ c bigger
2. We watch TV in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a bathroom                      ☐ b living room                      ☐ c kitchen
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ fix the cars and buses.  
☐ a cleaners                      ☐ b plumbers                      ☐ c mechanics
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is a renewable energy source.  
☐ a Gas                      ☐ b Oil                      ☐ c Wave energy
5. I want to play football, \_\_\_\_\_ my leg hurts.  
☐ a and                      ☐ b so                      ☐ c but



**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. you - Where - work - do?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. are - are - the - tomatoes - green?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. grandparents - us - with - live - live.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. is - than - an elephant - smaller - is.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. listen - teachers - to - carefully - listen - our.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

## Tests



### A- Listening

 **Listen and choose the correct answer:** استمع وأحتر الاجابة الصحيحة:



1. Hossam's favorite room is the ... (kitchen - bedroom - living room)
2. Hossam ... do his homework quietly. (can - can't - is)
3. Hossam has a ... balcony. (small - big - cold)

### B- Language Functions

 **Read and complete the dialog:** أقرأ و أكمل المحادثة

live - houseboat - you - Nile

Hazem : Where do ... live?

Anas : I live on a ... . What about you?

I ... in a village next to the ... .

### C- Reading Comprehension

 **Read the text and answer the following questions:**

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة التالية:

I'm Zain. I'm in grade four. My favorite sport is basketball. I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice four times every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I eat healthy food. I eat fruit and vegetables. I play basketball with my friends in the park.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

1. How many times do they practice every week?
2. Does Zain eat healthy food?





**B - Choose the correct answer:**

3. Zain is in grade .....  
☐ a three                      ☐ b four                      ☐ c five
4. He likes to play .....  
☐ a volleyball                      ☐ b tennis                      ☐ c basketball
5. Zain wants to drink more .....  
☐ a juice                      ☐ b water                      ☐ c milk

**D- Vocabulary and Structures**

**4 Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I sleep in a big ..... It has two big beds.  
☐ a bathroom                      ☐ b bedroom                      ☐ c kitchen
2. **A :** ..... is the cat?    **B :** It's under the table.  
☐ a What                      ☐ b Why                      ☐ c Where
3. The mouse is ..... than the elephant.  
☐ a smallest                      ☐ b smaller                      ☐ c small
4. .... keep the school clean.  
☐ a Cleaners                      ☐ b Plumbers                      ☐ c Teachers
5. Camels are perfect for the .....  
☐ a sea                      ☐ b lake                      ☐ c desert

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. is - the - Where - mall - shopping?  
 .....  
 .....
2. you - helping - Do - people - like?  
 .....  
 .....
3. park - play - the - I - in - football.  
 .....  
 .....
4. next - My home - is - the - to - school.  
 .....  
 .....
5. are - and - in - The pelican - the bear - the river.  
 .....  
 .....



## Test 22

### (A) Reading

#### 1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

breakfast - do - bed - my

I get up at six o'clock. I wash ① face. I have ② at seven. I get dressed. I go to school at seven thirty. I ③ my homework in the evening. I watch TV at night. I go to ④ at ten o'clock..

#### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The guide works in the ..... industry.  
☐ a tourism      ☐ b education      ☐ c fishing      ☐ d farming
- The rhinoceroses have big ears and long .....  
☐ a eyes      ☐ b horns      ☐ c coats      ☐ d feet
- The emperor lives in a .....  
☐ a tent      ☐ b school      ☐ c palace      ☐ d hospital
- They used rainwater to ..... the seeds  
☐ a move      ☐ b eat      ☐ c dry      ☐ d water

#### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Noha. I went to the zoo last week. I went with my family. I went there by car. I arrived there at ten o'clock. I saw the lion and the tiger. I saw many birds. I was very happy. It was a nice day. We took many photos. We went home at seven p.m

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is mainly about a visit to the .....  
☐ a museum      ☐ b zoo      ☐ c park      ☐ d desert
- Noha went to the zoo .....  
☐ a by herself      ☐ b alone      ☐ c on foot      ☐ d with her family

3. Noha saw ..... at the zoo.

- a** animals                      **b** cars                      **c** birds                      **d** a&c

4. Noha took many .....

- a** bags                      **b** books                      **c** photos                      **d** animals

### (B) Writing

**4 Choose the correct form in the following sentences from a, b or c:**

اختر الجمل الصحيحة:

1. have - some - juice - like - I'd - to.

- a** I'd like to have some juice.  
**b** I'd like have to some juice.  
**c** I'd have like to some juice.

2. your - should - wear - You - uniform - school.

- a** You should wear your uniform school.  
**b** You should wear your school uniform.  
**c** You wear should school your uniform.

**5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الترتيب الصحيح للجمل لتكوين فقرة إنشائية:

- a** (.....) I ordered fish and rice there.  
**b** (.....) I ordered salad, too.  
**c** (.....) After I had my meal, I went back home.  
**d** (.....) Yesterday, I went to a restaurant.

# Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في كراسة التدريبات



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع  
الواردة في كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات  
الخاصة بكتاب **Bit Bit**

## Test 1 on Units 1-2

There are a lot of animals in our country. These animals are beautiful, scary, dangerous and helpful. For example, snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they are important. They eat insects and lizards. This controls the numbers of the small animals.

## Test 2 on Units 1-2

I like horses. They have large beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live in the desert. They need people to look after them.

## Test 1 on Units 3-4

Gamal lives with his family in a small village. There are a lot of places. There's a school next to the post office. The bank is behind Gamal's house. But there aren't shopping malls or museums. It's a clean and quiet village.

## Test 1 on Units 3-4

My uncle grows tomatoes on his farm. He can take the seeds to grow new tomatoes. He plants the seeds in the soil. He waters the plants every day.

## Test 1 on Units 5-6

We should respect all jobs around us because they are important in our life. For example, the cleaner keeps our streets clean. The plumber fixes our pipes. The electrician connects our homes to electricity.

## Test 2 on Units 5-6

Mr Hossam is a fisherman. He works on the sea. He wakes up early every day. He goes out on his boat and catches fish. He comes back in the afternoon and sells his fish in his shop.

## General Tests

### Test 1

There are many interesting jobs in our city. A plumber fixes faucets. An electrician connects homes to electricity. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage. A bus driver takes children to school.

### Test 2

My friend Mohamed lives in a village. His house is next to the school. Mohamed's father is a farmer. He grows onions and tomatoes. He raises chickens, too.



Test 3

Soha works at the supermarket. We meet her when we buy food. Soha is very kind and happy. We see Soha at the supermarket every morning.

Test 4

Judy thinks she is healthy. She doesn't eat candy. She likes walking. She does a lot of sport.

Test 5

Mariam lives in a big city. Her house is near the Nile. Mariam can see the river all day. Mariam's father is a doctor and her mother is a teacher.

Test 6

Reham lives in Hurghada. There are some beautiful houses and bazaars. There's the Sahara Desert. Tourists go on safaris there.

Test 7

The fennec fox lives in the deserts. It loses heat from its ears. Its ears are very big. It needs big ears to hear insects.

Test 8

Judy thinks she is healthy. On the weekend, she walks to her grandma's house. She really likes walking. She likes mangoes. Mangoes are her favorite fruit.

Test 9

Omar lives in Hurghada. It is in the east of Egypt. It is on the Red Sea. About 190,000 people live in Hurghada.

Test 10

Egyptian farmers are important for us. They produce many things. They grow onions, lemons, grapes and sugarcane. They raise many animals.

Test 11

Papyrus is a very special plant. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make many things. They used papyrus to make paper. Papyrus grows near the Nile Delta.

Test 12

Mom is preparing lunch in the kitchen. She is cooking potatoes and chicken. I like them very much. All food we have comes from our country Egypt. Egyptian farmers produce many things. They grow vegetables and raise chickens.

Test 13

Zain lives in a village next to the Nile. He lives in a house with his family. His house is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees in front of the house.

Test 14

My grandfather is a farmer. He has a small farm. He raises chickens and sheep. We are happy to eat fresh food.

Test 15

Today, I read about the germination process. We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs water to grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then, it grows a shoot. A shoot grows taller to have leaves. Finally, the plant grows flowers and fruits.

## Listening

## Test 16

Damietta is an Egyptian governorate. Its land is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow many crops such as rice and wheat. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea.

## Test 17

Farmers work in an agricultural habitat. They look after the trees. They grow plants like bean plants and oranges to the markets. People need these plants to eat.

## Test 18

Hurghada is a big city in the east of Egypt. Hurghada is on the Red Sea. About 190,000 people live there.

## Test 19

Camels are beautiful. They are strong animals. They help us to carry things and people. Camels' milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes.

## Al Azhar Test 20

We moved to a new apartment. My brother Ali likes the living room. The balcony is big.

## Al Azhar Test 21

Hossam's family moved to a new apartment. Hossam's favorite room is the bedroom. He can do his homework quietly. Hossam has a big balcony.

## Notes